

EXTRAS ONLINE

 Springer

*More*  
Math Into L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X



George Grätzer

*More*  
Math Into L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X

Fifth Edition



George Grätzer  
Toronto, ON, Canada

ISBN 978-3-319-23795-4      ISBN 978-3-319-23796-1 (eBook)  
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-23796-1

Library of Congress Control Number: 2015953672

Springer Cham Heidelberg New York Dordrecht London  
© Springer International Publishing AG 2016

This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed.

The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, service marks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.

The publisher, the authors and the editors are safe to assume that the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication. Neither the publisher nor the authors or the editors give a warranty, express or implied, with respect to the material contained herein or for any errors or omissions that may have been made.

Printed on acid-free paper

Springer International Publishing AG Switzerland is part of Springer Science+Business Media ([www.springer.com](http://www.springer.com))

**To the Volunteers**

without whose dedication,  
over 25 years,  
this book could not have been done

and to the young ones

**Emma** (10),

**Kate** (8),

**Jay** (3)



---

# *Short Contents*

<b>Foreword</b>	<b>xxi</b>
<b>Preface to the fifth edition</b>	<b>xxv</b>
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>xxvii</b>
<b>I Mission Impossible</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1 Short course</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>2 And a few more things...</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>II Text and Math</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>3 Typing text</b>	<b>45</b>
<b>4 Text environments</b>	<b>101</b>
<b>5 Typing math</b>	<b>135</b>
<b>6 More math</b>	<b>171</b>
<b>7 Multiline math displays</b>	<b>195</b>
<b>III Document Structure</b>	<b>233</b>
<b>8 Documents</b>	<b>235</b>
<b>9 The AMS article document class</b>	<b>261</b>

<b>10 Legacy documents</b>	<b>291</b>
<b>IV PDF Documents</b>	<b>303</b>
<b>11 The PDF file format</b>	<b>305</b>
<b>12 Presentations</b>	<b>313</b>
<b>13 Illustrations</b>	<b>349</b>
<b>V Customization</b>	<b>365</b>
<b>14 Commands and environments</b>	<b>367</b>
<b>VI Long Documents</b>	<b>425</b>
<b>15 BIB<sub>TEX</sub></b>	<b>427</b>
<b>16 MakeIndex</b>	<b>455</b>
<b>17 Books in L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X</b>	<b>471</b>
<b>A Math symbol tables</b>	<b>491</b>
<b>B Text symbol tables</b>	<b>505</b>
<b>C Some background</b>	<b>511</b>
<b>D L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X and the Internet</b>	<b>525</b>
<b>E PostScript fonts</b>	<b>531</b>
<b>F L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X localized</b>	<b>535</b>
<b>G L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X on the iPad</b>	<b>539</b>
<b>H Final thoughts</b>	<b>553</b>
<b>Bibliography</b>	<b>557</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>561</b>

---

# *Contents*

<b>Foreword</b>	<b>xxi</b>
<b>Preface to the fifth edition</b>	<b>xxv</b>
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>xxvii</b>
Is this book for you? . . . . .	xxvii
What's in the book? . . . . .	xxix
Conventions . . . . .	xxxi
<b>I Mission Impossible</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1 Short course</b>	<b>3</b>
1.1 Getting started . . . . .	5
1.1.1 Your L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X . . . . .	5
1.1.2 Sample files . . . . .	5
1.1.3 Editing cycle . . . . .	5
1.1.4 Typing the source file . . . . .	6
1.2 The keyboard . . . . .	7
1.3 Your first text notes . . . . .	8
1.4 Lines too wide . . . . .	11
1.5 A note with formulas . . . . .	12
1.6 The building blocks of a formula . . . . .	14
1.7 Displayed formulas . . . . .	18
1.7.1 Equations . . . . .	18
1.7.2 Symbolic referencing . . . . .	19
1.7.3 Aligned formulas . . . . .	21
1.7.4 Cases . . . . .	23
1.8 The anatomy of a document . . . . .	24

1.9	Your own commands . . . . .	26
1.10	Adding an illustration . . . . .	26
1.11	The anatomy of a presentation . . . . .	27
<b>2</b>	<b>And a few more things...</b>	<b>31</b>
2.1	Structure . . . . .	31
2.2	Auxiliary files . . . . .	32
2.3	Logical and visual design . . . . .	35
2.4	General error messages . . . . .	35
2.5	Errors in math . . . . .	38
2.6	Your errors: Davey's Dos and Don'ts . . . . .	39
<b>II</b>	<b>Text and Math</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Typing text</b>	<b>45</b>
3.1	The keyboard . . . . .	46
3.1.1	Basic keys . . . . .	46
3.1.2	Special keys . . . . .	47
3.1.3	Prohibited keys . . . . .	47
3.2	Words, sentences, and paragraphs . . . . .	48
3.2.1	Spacing rules . . . . .	48
3.2.2	Periods . . . . .	49
3.3	Commanding L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X . . . . .	51
3.3.1	Commands and environments . . . . .	51
3.3.2	Scope . . . . .	55
3.3.3	Types of commands . . . . .	57
3.4	Symbols not on the keyboard . . . . .	58
3.4.1	Quotation marks . . . . .	58
3.4.2	Dashes . . . . .	59
3.4.3	Ties or nonbreakable spaces . . . . .	60
3.4.4	Special characters . . . . .	60
3.4.5	Ellipses . . . . .	62
3.4.6	Ligatures . . . . .	62
3.4.7	Accents and symbols in text . . . . .	63
3.4.8	Logos and dates . . . . .	63
3.4.9	Hyphenation . . . . .	65
3.5	Comments and footnotes . . . . .	68
3.5.1	Comments . . . . .	69
3.5.2	Footnotes . . . . .	71
3.6	Changing font characteristics . . . . .	72
3.6.1	Basic font characteristics . . . . .	72
3.6.2	Document font families . . . . .	73

3.6.3	Shape commands . . . . .	75
3.6.4	Italic corrections . . . . .	76
3.6.5	Series . . . . .	77
3.6.6	Size changes . . . . .	77
3.6.7	Orthogonality . . . . .	78
3.6.8	Obsolete two-letter commands . . . . .	79
3.6.9	Low-level commands . . . . .	79
3.7	Lines, paragraphs, and pages . . . . .	80
3.7.1	Lines . . . . .	80
3.7.2	Paragraphs . . . . .	83
3.7.3	Pages . . . . .	84
3.7.4	Multicolumn printing . . . . .	86
3.8	Spaces . . . . .	86
3.8.1	Horizontal spaces . . . . .	86
3.8.2	Vertical spaces . . . . .	88
3.8.3	Relative spaces . . . . .	90
3.8.4	Expanding spaces . . . . .	90
3.9	Boxes . . . . .	91
3.9.1	Line boxes . . . . .	91
3.9.2	Frame boxes . . . . .	93
3.9.3	Paragraph boxes . . . . .	95
3.9.4	Marginal comments . . . . .	96
3.9.5	Solid boxes . . . . .	97
3.9.6	Fine tuning boxes . . . . .	99
<b>4</b>	<b>Text environments</b>	<b>101</b>
4.1	Some general rules for displayed text environments . . . . .	102
4.2	List environments . . . . .	102
4.2.1	Numbered lists . . . . .	102
4.2.2	Bulleted lists . . . . .	103
4.2.3	Captioned lists . . . . .	104
4.2.4	A rule and combinations . . . . .	104
4.3	Style and size environments . . . . .	107
4.4	Proclamations (theorem-like structures) . . . . .	108
4.4.1	The full syntax . . . . .	112
4.4.2	Proclamations with style . . . . .	113
4.5	Proof environments . . . . .	115
4.6	Tabular environments . . . . .	117
4.6.1	Table styles . . . . .	124
4.7	Tabbing environments . . . . .	125
4.8	Miscellaneous displayed text environments . . . . .	127

<b>5 Typing math</b>	<b>135</b>
5.1 Math environments . . . . .	136
5.2 Spacing rules . . . . .	138
5.3 Equations . . . . .	139
5.4 Basic constructs . . . . .	140
5.4.1 Arithmetic operations . . . . .	141
5.4.2 Binomial coefficients . . . . .	143
5.4.3 Ellipses . . . . .	143
5.4.4 Integrals . . . . .	144
5.4.5 Roots . . . . .	145
5.4.6 Text in math . . . . .	146
5.4.7 Hebrew and Greek letters . . . . .	147
5.5 Delimiters . . . . .	147
5.5.1 Stretching delimiters . . . . .	149
5.5.2 Delimiters that do not stretch . . . . .	150
5.5.3 Limitations of stretching . . . . .	151
5.5.4 Delimiters as binary relations . . . . .	152
5.6 Operators . . . . .	152
5.6.1 Operator tables . . . . .	152
5.6.2 Congruences . . . . .	154
5.6.3 Large operators . . . . .	155
5.6.4 Multiline subscripts and superscripts . . . . .	157
5.7 Math accents . . . . .	157
5.8 Stretchable horizontal lines . . . . .	159
5.8.1 Horizontal braces . . . . .	159
5.8.2 Overlines and underlines . . . . .	160
5.8.3 Stretchable arrow math symbols . . . . .	160
5.9 Building a formula step-by-step . . . . .	161
5.10 Formula Gallery . . . . .	164
<b>6 More math</b>	<b>171</b>
6.1 Spacing of symbols . . . . .	171
6.1.1 Classification . . . . .	172
6.1.2 Three exceptions . . . . .	172
6.1.3 Spacing commands . . . . .	174
6.1.4 Examples . . . . .	174
6.1.5 The <code>phantom</code> command . . . . .	175
6.2 The STIX math symbols . . . . .	176
6.2.1 Swinging it . . . . .	176
6.2.2 The STIX project . . . . .	177
6.2.3 Installation and usage . . . . .	177
6.3 Building new symbols . . . . .	178

6.3.1	Stacking symbols . . . . .	178
6.3.2	Negating and side-setting symbols . . . . .	181
6.3.3	Changing the type of a symbol . . . . .	182
6.4	Math alphabets and symbols . . . . .	182
6.4.1	Math alphabets . . . . .	183
6.4.2	Math symbol alphabets . . . . .	184
6.4.3	Bold math symbols . . . . .	185
6.4.4	Size changes . . . . .	186
6.4.5	Continued fractions . . . . .	187
6.5	Vertical spacing . . . . .	187
6.6	Tagging and grouping . . . . .	189
6.7	Miscellaneous . . . . .	191
6.7.1	Generalized fractions . . . . .	191
6.7.2	Boxed formulas . . . . .	193
<b>7</b>	<b>Multiline math displays</b>	<b>195</b>
7.1	Visual Guide . . . . .	195
7.1.1	Columns . . . . .	195
7.1.2	Subsidiary math environments . . . . .	197
7.1.3	Adjusted columns . . . . .	198
7.1.4	Aligned columns . . . . .	198
7.1.5	Touring the Visual Guide . . . . .	198
7.2	Gathering formulas . . . . .	199
7.3	Splitting long formulas . . . . .	200
7.4	Some general rules . . . . .	202
7.4.1	General rules . . . . .	202
7.4.2	Subformula rules . . . . .	203
7.4.3	Breaking and aligning formulas . . . . .	205
7.4.4	Numbering groups of formulas . . . . .	205
7.5	Aligned columns . . . . .	207
7.5.1	An <code>align</code> variant . . . . .	209
7.5.2	<code>eqnarray</code> , the ancestor of <code>align</code> . . . . .	209
7.5.3	The subformula rule revisited . . . . .	210
7.5.4	The <code>alignat</code> environment . . . . .	211
7.5.5	Inserting text . . . . .	213
7.6	Aligned subsidiary math environments . . . . .	215
7.6.1	Subsidiary variants . . . . .	215
7.6.2	Split . . . . .	217
7.7	Adjusted columns . . . . .	220
7.7.1	Matrices . . . . .	220
7.7.2	Arrays . . . . .	224
7.7.3	Cases . . . . .	227

7.8 Commutative diagrams . . . . .	228
7.9 Adjusting the display . . . . .	230
<b>III Document Structure</b>	<b>233</b>
<b>8 Documents</b>	<b>235</b>
8.1 The structure of a document . . . . .	236
8.2 The preamble . . . . .	237
8.3 Top matter . . . . .	239
8.3.1 Abstract . . . . .	239
8.4 Main matter . . . . .	239
8.4.1 Sectioning . . . . .	240
8.4.2 Cross-referencing . . . . .	243
8.4.3 Floating tables and illustrations . . . . .	248
8.5 Back matter . . . . .	251
8.5.1 Bibliographies in articles . . . . .	251
8.5.2 Simple indexes . . . . .	257
8.6 Visual design . . . . .	258
<b>9 The AMS article document class</b>	<b>261</b>
9.1 Why <i>amsart</i> ? . . . . .	261
9.1.1 Submitting an article to the AMS . . . . .	261
9.1.2 Submitting an article to Algebra Universalis . . . . .	262
9.1.3 Submitting to other journals . . . . .	262
9.1.4 Submitting to conference proceedings . . . . .	263
9.2 The top matter . . . . .	263
9.2.1 Article information . . . . .	263
9.2.2 Author information . . . . .	265
9.2.3 AMS information . . . . .	269
9.2.4 Multiple authors . . . . .	270
9.2.5 Examples . . . . .	271
9.2.6 Abstract . . . . .	274
9.3 The sample article . . . . .	274
9.4 Article templates . . . . .	282
9.5 Options . . . . .	285
9.6 The AMS packages . . . . .	288
<b>10 Legacy documents</b>	<b>291</b>
10.1 Articles and reports . . . . .	291
10.1.1 Top matter . . . . .	292
10.1.2 Options . . . . .	294
10.2 Letters . . . . .	296

10.3 The L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X distribution . . . . .	298
10.3.1 Tools . . . . .	300

## IV PDF Documents 303

<b>11 The PDF file format</b>	<b>305</b>
11.1 PostScript and PDF . . . . .	305
11.1.1 PostScript . . . . .	305
11.1.2 PDF . . . . .	306
11.1.3 Hyperlinks . . . . .	307
11.2 Hyperlinks for L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X . . . . .	307
11.2.1 Using <code>hyperref</code> . . . . .	307
11.2.2 <code>backref</code> and <code>colorlinks</code> . . . . .	308
11.2.3 Bookmarks . . . . .	309
11.2.4 Additional commands . . . . .	310
<b>12 Presentations</b>	<b>313</b>
12.1 Quick and dirty <code>beamer</code> . . . . .	314
12.1.1 First changes . . . . .	314
12.1.2 Changes in the body . . . . .	315
12.1.3 Making things prettier . . . . .	315
12.1.4 Adjusting the navigation . . . . .	316
12.2 Baby beamers . . . . .	319
12.2.1 Overlays . . . . .	321
12.2.2 Understanding overlays . . . . .	323
12.2.3 More on the <code>\only</code> and <code>\onslide</code> commands . . . . .	325
12.2.4 Lists as overlays . . . . .	327
12.2.5 Out of sequence overlays . . . . .	329
12.2.6 Blocks and overlays . . . . .	330
12.2.7 Links . . . . .	331
12.2.8 Columns . . . . .	335
12.2.9 Coloring . . . . .	336
12.3 The structure of a presentation . . . . .	339
12.3.1 Longer presentations . . . . .	341
12.3.2 Navigation symbols . . . . .	341
12.4 Notes . . . . .	342
12.5 Themes . . . . .	343
12.6 Planning your presentation . . . . .	345
12.7 What did I leave out? . . . . .	346

<b>13 Illustrations</b>	<b>349</b>
13.1 Your first picture . . . . .	350
13.2 The building blocks of an illustration . . . . .	353
13.3 Transformations . . . . .	358
13.4 Path attributes . . . . .	360
13.5 Coding the example . . . . .	363
13.6 What did I leave out? . . . . .	364
<b>V Customization</b>	<b>365</b>
<b>14 Commands and environments</b>	<b>367</b>
14.1 Custom commands . . . . .	368
14.1.1 Examples and rules . . . . .	368
14.1.2 Arguments . . . . .	374
14.1.3 Short arguments . . . . .	377
14.1.4 Optional arguments . . . . .	378
14.1.5 Redefining commands . . . . .	378
14.1.6 Defining operators . . . . .	379
14.1.7 Redefining names . . . . .	380
14.1.8 Showing the definitions of commands . . . . .	381
14.1.9 Delimited commands . . . . .	383
14.2 Custom environments . . . . .	385
14.2.1 Modifying existing environments . . . . .	385
14.2.2 Arguments . . . . .	388
14.2.3 Optional arguments with default values . . . . .	389
14.2.4 Short contents . . . . .	389
14.2.5 Brand-new environments . . . . .	390
14.3 A custom command file . . . . .	390
14.4 The sample article with custom commands . . . . .	400
14.5 Numbering and measuring . . . . .	406
14.5.1 Counters . . . . .	406
14.5.2 Length commands . . . . .	410
14.6 Custom lists . . . . .	414
14.6.1 Length commands for the <code>list</code> environment . . . . .	414
14.6.2 The <code>list</code> environment . . . . .	416
14.6.3 Two complete examples . . . . .	419
14.6.4 The <code>trivlist</code> environment . . . . .	422
14.7 The dangers of customization . . . . .	422

<b>VI Long Documents</b>	<b>425</b>
<b>15 BIB<sub>TEX</sub></b>	<b>427</b>
15.1 The database . . . . .	429
15.1.1 Entry types . . . . .	429
15.1.2 Typing fields . . . . .	432
15.1.3 Articles . . . . .	434
15.1.4 Books . . . . .	435
15.1.5 Conference proceedings and collections . . . . .	436
15.1.6 Theses . . . . .	439
15.1.7 Technical reports . . . . .	440
15.1.8 Manuscripts and other entry types . . . . .	441
15.1.9 Abbreviations . . . . .	442
15.2 Using BIB <sub>TEX</sub> . . . . .	443
15.2.1 Sample files . . . . .	443
15.2.2 Setup . . . . .	444
15.2.3 Four steps of BIB <sub>TEX</sub> ing . . . . .	445
15.2.4 BIB <sub>TEX</sub> files . . . . .	447
15.2.5 BIB <sub>TEX</sub> rules and messages . . . . .	449
15.2.6 Submitting an article . . . . .	452
15.3 Concluding comments . . . . .	452
<b>16 MakeIndex</b>	<b>455</b>
16.1 Preparing the document . . . . .	455
16.2 Index commands . . . . .	459
16.3 Processing the index entries . . . . .	465
16.4 Rules . . . . .	467
16.5 Multiple indexes . . . . .	469
16.6 Glossary . . . . .	470
16.7 Concluding comments . . . . .	470
<b>17 Books in L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X</b>	<b>471</b>
17.1 Book document classes . . . . .	472
17.1.1 Sectioning . . . . .	472
17.1.2 Division of the body . . . . .	473
17.1.3 Document class options . . . . .	474
17.1.4 Title pages . . . . .	474
17.2 Tables of contents, lists of tables and figures . . . . .	475
17.2.1 Tables of contents . . . . .	475
17.2.2 Lists of tables and figures . . . . .	477
17.2.3 Exercises . . . . .	478
17.3 Organizing the files for a book . . . . .	479
17.3.1 The folders and the master document . . . . .	479

17.3.2 Inclusion and selective inclusion . . . . .	480
17.3.3 Organizing your files . . . . .	481
17.4 Logical design . . . . .	481
17.5 Final preparations for the publisher . . . . .	484
17.6 If you create the PDF file for your book . . . . .	486
<b>A Math symbol tables</b>	<b>491</b>
A.1 Hebrew and Greek letters . . . . .	491
A.2 Binary relations . . . . .	493
A.3 Binary operations . . . . .	496
A.4 Arrows . . . . .	497
A.5 Miscellaneous symbols . . . . .	498
A.6 Delimiters . . . . .	499
A.7 Operators . . . . .	500
A.7.1 Large operators . . . . .	501
A.8 Math accents and fonts . . . . .	502
A.9 Math spacing commands . . . . .	503
<b>B Text symbol tables</b>	<b>505</b>
B.1 Some European characters . . . . .	505
B.2 Text accents . . . . .	506
B.3 Text font commands . . . . .	506
B.3.1 Text font family commands . . . . .	506
B.3.2 Text font size changes . . . . .	507
B.4 Additional text symbols . . . . .	508
B.5 Additional text symbols with T1 encoding . . . . .	509
B.6 Text spacing commands . . . . .	510
<b>C Some background</b>	<b>511</b>
C.1 A short history . . . . .	511
C.1.1 T <sub>E</sub> X . . . . .	511
C.1.2 L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 2.09 and AMS-T <sub>E</sub> X . . . . .	512
C.1.3 L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 3 . . . . .	513
C.1.4 More recent developments . . . . .	514
C.2 How L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X works . . . . .	515
C.2.1 The layers . . . . .	515
C.2.2 Typesetting . . . . .	516
C.2.3 Viewing and printing . . . . .	517
C.2.4 L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X's files . . . . .	518
C.3 Interactive L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X . . . . .	521
C.4 Separating form and content . . . . .	522

<b>D <math>\text{\LaTeX}</math> and the Internet</b>	<b>525</b>
D.1 Obtaining files from the Internet . . . . .	525
D.2 The $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ Users Group . . . . .	528
D.3 Some useful sources of $\text{\LaTeX}$ information . . . . .	529
<b>E PostScript fonts</b>	<b>531</b>
E.1 The Times font and MathTime . . . . .	532
E.2 Lucida Bright fonts . . . . .	534
E.3 More PostScript fonts . . . . .	534
<b>F <math>\text{\LaTeX}</math> localized</b>	<b>535</b>
<b>G <math>\text{\LaTeX}</math> on the iPad</b>	<b>539</b>
G.1 The iPad as a computer . . . . .	540
G.1.1 File system . . . . .	540
G.1.2 FileApp . . . . .	541
G.1.3 Printing . . . . .	543
G.1.4 Text editors . . . . .	543
G.2 Files . . . . .	544
G.3 Two $\text{\LaTeX}$ implementations for the iPad . . . . .	544
G.3.1 Texpad . . . . .	544
G.3.2 TeX Writer . . . . .	550
G.4 Conclusion . . . . .	551
<b>H Final thoughts</b>	<b>553</b>
H.1 What was left out? . . . . .	553
H.1.1 $\text{\LaTeX}$ omissions . . . . .	553
H.1.2 $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ omissions . . . . .	554
H.2 Further reading . . . . .	555
<b>Bibliography</b>	<b>557</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>561</b>



---

# *Foreword*

It was the autumn of 1989—a few weeks before the Berlin wall came down, President George H. W. Bush was president, and the American Mathematical Society decided to outsource  $\text{\TeX}$  programming to Frank Mittelbach and me.

Why did the AMS outsource  $\text{\TeX}$  programming to us? This was, after all, a decade before the words “outsourcing” and “off-shore” entered the lexicon. There were many American  $\text{\TeX}$  experts. Why turn elsewhere?

For a number of years, the AMS tried to port the mathematical typesetting features of AMS- $\text{\TeX}$  to  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , but they made little progress with the AMSFonts. Frank and I had just published the New Font Selection Scheme for  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , which went a long way to satisfy what they wanted to accomplish. So it was logical that the AMS turned to us to add AMSFonts to  $\text{\LaTeX}$ . Being young and enthusiastic, we convinced the AMS that the AMS- $\text{\TeX}$  commands should be changed to conform to the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  standards. Michael Downes was assigned as our AMS contact; his insight was a tremendous help.

We already had  $\text{\LaTeX-NFSS}$ , which could be run in two modes: compatible with the old  $\text{\LaTeX}$  or enabled with the new font features. We added the reworked AMS- $\text{\TeX}$  code to  $\text{\LaTeX-NFSS}$ , thus giving birth to AMS- $\text{\LaTeX}$ , released by the AMS at the August 1990 meeting of the International Mathematical Union in Kyoto.

AMS- $\text{\LaTeX}$  was another variant of  $\text{\LaTeX}$ . Many installations had several  $\text{\LaTeX}$  variants to satisfy the needs of their users: with old and new font changing commands, with and without AMS- $\text{\LaTeX}$ , a single and a multi-language version. We decided to develop a Standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$  that would reconcile all the variants. Out of a group of interested people grew what was later called the  $\text{\LaTeX3}$  team—and the  $\text{\LaTeX3}$  project got underway. The team’s first major accomplishment was the release of  $\text{\LaTeXe}$  in June 1994. This standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$  incorporates all the improvements we wanted back in 1989. It is now very stable and it is uniformly used.

Under the direction of Michael Downes, our AMS- $\text{\LaTeX}$  code was turned into AMS packages that run under  $\text{\LaTeX}$  just like other packages. Of course, the  $\text{\LaTeX3}$  team recognizes that these are special; we call them “required packages” because they are part and parcel of a mathematician’s standard toolbox.

Since then a lot has been achieved to make an author's task easier. A tremendous number of additional packages are available today. The *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Companion*, 2nd edition, describes many of my favorite packages.

George Grätzer got involved with these developments in 1990, when he got his copy of AMS-L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X in Kyoto. The documentation he received explained that AMS-L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X is a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X variant—read Lampert's L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X book to get the proper background. AMS-L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X is not AMS-T<sub>E</sub>X either—read Spivak's AMS-T<sub>E</sub>X book to get the proper background. The rest of the document explained in what way AMS-L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X differs from L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X and AMS-T<sub>E</sub>X. Talk about a steep learning curve ...

Luckily, George's frustration working through this nightmare was eased by his lengthy e-mail correspondence with Frank and lots of telephone calls to Michael. Three years of labor turned into his first book on L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, providing a “simple introduction to AMS-L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X”. This edition is more mature, but preserves what made his first book such a success. Just as in the first book, Part I, *Mission Impossible*, is a short introduction for the beginner. Chapter 1, *Short Course*, dramatically reducing the steep learning curve of a few weeks to a few hours in only 30 pages. Chapter 2, *And a few more things...* adds a few more advanced topics useful already at this early stage.

The rest of the book is a detailed presentation of everything you may need to know. George “teaches by example”. You find in this book many illustrations of even the simplest concepts. For articles, he presents the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X source file and the typeset result. For formulas, he discusses the building blocks with examples, presents a *Formula Gallery*, and a *Visual Guide* for multiline formulas.

Going forth and creating “masterpieces of the typesetting art”—as Donald Knuth put it at the end of the T<sub>E</sub>Xbook—requires a fair bit of initiation. This is the book for the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X beginner as well as for the advanced user. You just start at a different point.

The topics covered include everything you need for mathematical publishing.

- Instructions on creating articles, from the simple to the complex
- Converting an article to a presentation
- Customize L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X to your own needs
- The secrets of writing a book
- Where to turn to get more information

The many examples are complemented by a number of easily recognizable features:

**Rules** which you must follow

**Tips** on what to be careful about and how to achieve some specific results

**Experiments** to show what happens when you make mistakes—sometimes, it can be difficult to understand what went wrong when all you see is an obscure L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X message

This book teaches you how to convert your mathematical masterpieces into typographical ones, giving you a lot of useful advice on the way. How to avoid the traps for the unwary and how to make your editor happy. And hopefully, you'll experience the fascination of doing it right. Using good typography to better express your ideas.

If you want to learn  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , buy this book and start with the *Short Course*. If you can have only one book on  $\text{\LaTeX}$  next to your computer, this is the one to have. And if you want to learn about the world of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  packages as of 2004, also buy a second book, the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  *Companion*, 2nd edition.

A handwritten signature in black ink that reads "Rainer Schöpf". The signature is fluid and cursive, with "Rainer" on the first line and "Schöpf" on the second line.

Rainer Schöpf  
 $\text{\LaTeX}3$  team



---

# *Preface to the fifth edition*

My book *Practical L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X* [42] was published last year. Many of the changes in this fifth edition are based on *Practical L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X* and on my articles “What Is New in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X?” in the Notices of the American Mathematical Society [36]–[41] and [43].

*Part I. Short Course* of the fourth edition was revised under the title *Chapter 1. Short Course*. I renamed Part I: *Mission Impossible*. This part now has a second chapter: *And a few more things ...* The new Chapter 1 is what you absolutely, unquestionably must know to write your first T<sub>E</sub>X document. It’s only 30 pages long, should not take more than a few hours to read and understand. No typing is necessary, the files you need are provided for you, see Section 1.1.2.

The new Chapter 2 adds a few more topics that is helpful to know such as the aux files, what is their role, how to handle them. It deals in some detail with error messages. Finally, it contains Brian Davey’s list of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X mistakes most often made by authors.

To create “vector graphics” illustrations (see page 349 for an example), many users switched to Till Tantau’s Ti<sub>K</sub>Z package. We introduce Ti<sub>K</sub>Z in Chapter 13. We hope that the few commands we discuss are sufficient to get you started.

I carefully revised all the material in this book. One would think that this is not necessary in a fifth edition. But as Fred says, there are infinitely many typos in any book, and even our best efforts remove only finitely many. And so many of the links have changed...

Finally, I should mention that I renamed the awkward *user-defined commands* to *custom commands*. How come I have not thought of this before?



---

# *Introduction*

## *Is this book for you?*

This book is for the mathematician, physicist, engineer, scientist, linguist, or technical typist who has to learn how to typeset articles containing mathematical formulas or diacritical marks. It teaches you how to use  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , a typesetting markup language based on Donald E. Knuth's typesetting language  $\text{\TeX}$ , designed and implemented by Leslie Lamport, and greatly improved under the guidance of AMS.

Part I provides a quick introduction to  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , from typing examples of text and math to typing your first article such as the sample article on page 4 and creating your first presentation such as the sample presentation—four slides of which you find in Figure 1.5—in a very short time. The rest of the book provides a detailed exposition of  $\text{\LaTeX}$ .

$\text{\LaTeX}$  has a huge collection of rules and commands. While the basics in Part I should serve you well in all your writings, most articles and presentations also require you to look up special topics. Learn Part I well and become passingly familiar with the rest of the book, so when the need arises you know where to turn with your problems.

You can find specific topics in the Short Contents, the detailed Contents, and the Index.

Mathematicians find  $\text{\LaTeX}$  very strange. A typical article in mathematics deals with a field defined by a few axioms, and the topic of the article needs only a few more. In contrast,  $\text{\LaTeX}$  has hundreds of axioms. We try to ease the transition by introducing at the start as few commands as possible. For instance, we introduce presentations with only five new commands.

## What is document markup?

When you work with a word processor, you see your document on the computer monitor more or less as it looks when printed, with its various fonts, font sizes, font shapes (e.g., roman, italic) and weights (e.g., normal, boldface), interline spacing, indentation, and so on.

Working with a *markup language* is different. You type the *source file* of your article in a *text editor*, in which all characters appear in the same font. To indicate changes in the typeset text, you must add *text markup commands* to the source file. For instance, to emphasize the phrase *detailed description* in a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X source file, type

```
\emph{detailed description}
```

The \emph command is a markup command. The marked-up text yields the typeset output

detailed description

In order to typeset math, you need *math markup commands*. As a simple example, consider the formula  $\int \sqrt{\alpha^2 + x^2} dx$ . To mark it up in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, type

```
$\int \sqrt{\alpha^2 + x^2} dx$
```

You do not have to worry about determining the size of the integral symbol or how to construct the square root symbol that covers  $\alpha^2 + x^2$ . L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X does it all for you.

## The three layers

The markup language we shall discuss comes in three layers: T<sub>E</sub>X, L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, and the AMS packages, described in detail in Appendix C. Most L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X installations automatically place all three on your computer. You do not have to know what comes from which layer, so we consider the three together and call it L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

## The three platforms

Most of you run L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X on one of the following three computer types:

- A Windows computer, a computer running Microsoft Windows
- A Mac, a Macintosh computer running OS X
- A computer running a UNIX variant such as Solaris or Linux

The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X source file and the typeset version both look the same independent of what computer you have. However, the way you type your source file, the way you

typeset it, and the way you look at the typeset version depends on the computer and on the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  implementation you use.

## What's in the book?

**Part I** is *Mission Impossible*; it helps you to get started quickly with  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , to type your first articles, to make your first presentations, and it prepares you to tackle  $\text{\LaTeX}$  in more depth in the subsequent parts.

**Chapter 1** is the *Short Course*. You start writing your *first article*—as typeset on page 4—and prepare your *first presentation*—see some of the slides typeset on page 28. This chapter introduces how  $\text{\LaTeX}$  uses the *keyboard* and how to *type text*. You do not need to learn much to understand the basics. Text markup is quite easy. You also learn math markup, which is not so straightforward. Several sections in this chapter ease you into *mathematical typesetting*. There is a section on the basic building blocks of math formulas. Another one discusses equations. Finally, we present the two simplest multiline formulas, which should cover most of your everyday needs. We also cover the elements of presentations with a simple example.

In **Chapter 2**, we explain how things work, the structure of  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , the auxiliary files, the logical and visual design of an article,  $\text{\LaTeX}$  error messages. Finally, we present a long list of dos and don't to help you write good  $\text{\LaTeX}$ .

**Part II** introduces the two most basic skills for writing with  $\text{\LaTeX}$  in depth, *typing text* and *typing math*.

**Chapters 3** and **4** introduce *text* and *displayed text*. Chapter 3 is especially important because, when you type a  $\text{\LaTeX}$  document, most of your time is spent typing text. The topics covered include special characters and accents, hyphenation, fonts, and spacing. Chapter 4 covers displayed text, including *lists* and *tables*, and for the mathematician, *proclamations* (theorem-like structures) and *proofs*.

Typing math is the heart of any mathematical typesetting system. **Chapter 5** discusses inline formulas in detail, including basic constructs, delimiters, operators, math accents, and horizontally stretchable lines. The chapter concludes with the *Formula Gallery*.

Math symbols are covered in three sections in **Chapter 6**. How to space them, how to build new ones; we introduce the new set of some 2,000 STIX math symbols. We also look at the closely related subjects of math alphabets and fonts. Then we discuss tagging and grouping equations.

$\text{\LaTeX}$  knows a lot about typesetting an inline formula, but not much about how to display a multiline formula. **Chapter 7** presents the numerous tools  $\text{\LaTeX}$  offers to help you do that. We start with a *Visual Guide* to help you get oriented.

**Part III** discusses the parts of a  $\text{\LaTeX}$  document. In **Chapter 8**, you learn about the *structure* of a  $\text{\LaTeX}$  document. The most important topics are *sectioning* and *cross-referencing*. In **Chapter 9**, we discuss the *amsart document class* for articles. In particular, I present the title page information. Chapter 9 also features `secondarticle.tex`,

a sample article for `amsart`, somewhat more advanced than `firstarticle.tex` typeset on page 4. You can learn a lot about L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X just by reading the source file one paragraph at a time and seeing how that paragraph is typeset. We conclude this chapter with a brief description of the AMS distribution, the packages and document classes, of which `amsart` is a part.

In **Chapter 10** the most commonly used *legacy document classes* are presented, `article`, `report`, and `letter` (the book class is discussed in Chapter 17), along with a description of the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X distribution. Although `article` is not as sophisticated as `amsart`, it is commonly used for articles not meant for publication.

In **Part IV**, we start with **Chapter 11**, discussing PDF files, hyperlinks, and the `hyperref` package. This prepares you for *presentations*, which are PDF files with hyperlinks. In **Chapter 12** we utilize the `beamer` package for making L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X presentations and **Chapter 13** introduces its sister package `TikZ` for illustrations.

**Part V (Chapter 14)** introduces techniques to *customize* L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X: custom commands and environments created by users, and command files. We present a sample command file, `newlattice.sty`, and a version of the second sample article utilizing this command file. You learn how parameters that affect L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's behavior are stored in counters and length commands, how to change them, and how to design your own custom lists. A final section discusses the pitfalls of customization.

In **Part VI (Chapters 15 and 16)**, we discuss the special needs of longer documents. Two applications, contained in the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X distribution, `BIBTeX` and `MakeIndex`, make compiling *large bibliographies* and *indexes* much easier.

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X provides the `book` and the `amsbook` document classes to serve as foundations for well-designed books. We discuss these in **Chapter 17**. Better quality books have to use document classes designed by professionals.

You will probably find yourself referring to **Appendices A** and **B** time and again. They contain the *math and text symbol tables*. You can also find them in the `samples` file.

**Appendix C** relates some historical background material on L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. It gives you some insight into how L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X developed and how it works. **Appendix D** discusses the many ways we can find L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X material on the *Internet*. **Appendix E** is a short introduction to the use of *PostScript fonts* in a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X document. **Appendix F** briefly describes the use of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X for languages other than American English.

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X on an iPad is introduced in **Appendix G**.

Finally, **Appendix H** discusses what we left out, points you towards some areas for further reading, and mentions some recent developments.

Lots of sample files help you save typing examples, see Section 1.1.2. You also get PDF files of Mission Impossible, the symbol tables, and the STIX symbols.

## Mission statement

This book is a guide for typesetting mathematical documents within the constraints imposed by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, an elaborate system with hundreds of rules. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X allows you to perform almost any mathematical typesetting task through the appropriate application of its rules. You can customize L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X by introducing custom commands and environments and by changing L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X parameters. You can also extend L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X by invoking packages that accomplish special tasks.

*It is not my goal*

- to survey the hundreds of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X packages you can utilize to enhance L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X
- to teach how to write T<sub>E</sub>X code to create your own packages
- to discuss how to design beautiful documents by writing document classes

The definitive book on the first topic, as of 2004, is Frank Mittelbach and Michel Goosens's *The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Companion*, 2nd edition [56] (in collaboration with Johannes Braams, David Carlisle, and Chris Rowley). The second and third topics still await authoritative treatment.

## Conventions

To make this book easy to read, I use some simple conventions:

- Explanatory text is set in this typeface: Times.
- Computer Modern typewriter is used to show what you should type, as well as messages from LaTeX. All the characters in this typeface have the same width, making it easy to recognize.
- I also use Computer Modern typewriter to indicate
  - Commands (`\newpage`)
  - Environments (`\align`)
  - Documents (`firstarticle.tex`)
  - Document classes (`amsart`)
  - Document class options (`draft`)
  - Folders or directories (`work`)
  - The names of *packages*—extensions of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X (`verbatim`)

- When I show you how something looks when typeset, I use Computer Modern,  $\text{\TeX}$ 's standard typeface:

I think you find this typeface sufficiently different from the other typefaces I have used. The strokes are much lighter so that you should not have much difficulty recognizing typeset  $\text{\LaTeX}$  material. When the typeset material is a separate paragraph or paragraphs, corner brackets in the margin set it off from the rest of the text—unless it is a displayed formula.

- For explanations in the text, such as

Compare `iff` with `iff`, typed as `iff` and `if{f}`, respectively.

the same typefaces are used. Because they are not set off spatially, it may be a little more difficult to see that `iff` is set in Computer Modern roman (in Times, it looks like this: `iff`), whereas `if{f}` is set in the Computer Modern typewriter typeface. Compare: `iff`, `iff`, `iff`, and a larger version: `iff`, `iff`, `iff`.

- I usually introduce commands with examples, such as

`\[22pt]`

However, it is sometimes necessary to define the syntax of a command more formally. For instance,

`\[length]`

where `length`, typeset in Computer Modern typewriter italic font, represents the value you have to supply.

Good luck and have fun.



E-mail:

`gratzer@me.com`

Home page:

`http://server.maths.umanitoba.ca/homepages/gratzer/`

PART I

---

*Mission Impossible*



CHAPTER

1

---

*Short course*

It happens to most of us. We live a happy life without  $\text{\LaTeX}$  and then, all of a sudden, we have to do something urgent that requires it.

If you are a student, maybe your professor turned to you and said “I need the solutions to these exercises typed up and distributed to the class by tomorrow” and the solutions are chock-full of formulas, difficult to do in Word.

Or you are a researcher whose documents have always been typed up by a secretary. You have to attend a conference and give a presentation. Your secretary is on vacation.

In my case, it was a letter (this was before e-mail) from the American Mathematical Society, in which they informed me that my paper, written in Word, was accepted for publication. The AMS will publish the paper in nine months. However, a  $\text{\LaTeX}$  version would be published in three months! So I had to learn  $\text{\LaTeX}$  in a hurry.

The mission, should you choose to accept it, is to get started really fast in  $\text{\LaTeX}$ . Our goal is to produce in  $\text{\LaTeX}$  the little article printed on the next page.

Relax, this chapter will not self-destruct in five seconds.

**A TECHNICAL RESULT  
FOR CONGRUENCES OF FINITE LATTICES**

G. GRÄTZER

ABSTRACT. We present a technical result for congruences on finite lattices.

1. INTRODUCTION

In some recent research, G. Czédli and I, see [1] and [2], spent quite an effort in proving that some equivalence relations on a planar semimodular lattice are congruences. The number of cases we had to consider was dramatically cut by the following result.

**Theorem 1.** *Let  $L$  be a finite lattice. Let  $\delta$  be an equivalence relation on  $L$  with intervals as equivalence classes. Then  $\delta$  is a congruence relation iff the following condition and its dual hold:*

(C<sub>+</sub>) *If  $x$  is covered by  $y, z \in L$  and  $x \equiv y \pmod{\delta}$ , then  $z \equiv y + z \pmod{\delta}$ .*

2. THE PROOF

We prove the join-substitution property: if  $x \leq y$  and  $x \equiv y \pmod{\delta}$ , then

$$(1) \quad x + z \equiv y + z \pmod{\delta}.$$

Let  $U = [x, y + z]$ . We induct on length  $U$ , the length of  $U$ .

Let  $I = [y_1, y + z]$  and  $J = [z_1, y + z]$ . Then length  $I$  and length  $J <$  length  $U$ . Hence, the induction hypothesis applies to  $I$  and  $\delta \lceil I$ , and we obtain that  $w \equiv y + w \pmod{\delta}$ . By the transitivity of  $\delta$ , we conclude that

$$(2) \quad z_1 \equiv y + w \pmod{\delta}.$$

Therefore, applying the induction hypothesis to  $J$  and  $\delta \rceil J$ , we conclude (1).

REFERENCES

- [1] G. Czédli, *Patch extensions and trajectory colorings of slim rectangular lattices*. Algebra Universalis **88** (2013), 255–280.
- [2] G. Grätzer, *Congruences of fork extensions of lattices*. Acta Sci. Math. (Szeged), **57** (2014), 417–434.

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS, UNIVERSITY OF MANITOBA, WINNIPEG, MB R3T 2N2, CANADA  
*E-mail address*, G. Grätzer: [gratzer@me.com](mailto:gratzer@me.com)  
*URL*, G. Grätzer: <http://tinyurl.com/gratzerhomepage>

---

*Date:* March 21, 2015.

*2010 Mathematics Subject Classification.* Primary: 06B10.

*Key words and phrases.* finite lattice, congruence.

## 1.1 Getting started

### 1.1.1 Your L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X

Are you sitting in front of your computer that has a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X implementation? If you use a UNIX computer, you surely are. If you are in front of a Windows computer or a Mac, point your Internet browser at tug.org. Choose to download MikTeX for a Windows computer and MacTeX for a Mac. Follow the easy instructions (and be patient, these are big downloads) and you are done.

Even better, find a friend who can help.

### 1.1.2 Sample files

We work with a few sample documents. Download them from the Springer page for this book:

<http://www.springer.com/us/book/9783319237954>

I suggest you create a folder, `samples`, on your computer to store the downloaded sample files, and another folder called `work`, where you will keep your working files. Copy the documents from the `samples` to the `work` folder as needed. *In this book, the samples and work folders refer to the folders you created.*

One of the sample files is `sample.cls`. Make sure it is in the `work` folder when you typeset a sample document.

### 1.1.3 Editing cycle

Watch a friend type a document in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X and learn the basic steps.

1. A text editor is used to create a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X source file. A source file might look like this:

```
\documentclass{amsart}
\begin{document}
Then $\delta$ is a congruence relation. I can type formulas!
\end{document}
```

Note that the source file is different from a typical word processor file. All characters are displayed in the same font and size.

2. Your friend “typesets” the source file (tells the application to produce a typeset version) and views the result on the monitor:

Then  $\delta$  is a congruence relation. I can type formulas!

3. The editing cycle continues. Your friend goes back and forth between the source file and the typeset version, making changes and observing the results of these changes.

4. *The file is viewed/printed.* View the typeset version as a pdf file or print it to get a paper version.

If  $\text{\LaTeX}$  finds a mistake when typesetting the source file, it records this in the *log file*. The *log window* (some call it *console*) displays a shorter version.

Various  $\text{\LaTeX}$  implementations have different names for the source file, the text editor, the typeset file, the typeset window, the log file, and the log window. Become familiar with these names, so you can follow along with our discussions.

#### 1.1.4 Typing the source file

A source file is made up of *text*, *formulas*, and *instructions (commands) to  $\text{\LaTeX}$* .

For instance, consider the following variant of the first sentence of this paragraph:

A source file is made up of text, formulas (e.g.,  $\$\\sqrt{5}\\$$ ), and \emph{instructions to} \la.

This typesets as

A source file is made up of text, formulas (e.g.,  $\sqrt{5}$ ), and *instructions to  $\text{\LaTeX}$* .

In this sentence, the first part

A source file is made up of text, formulas (e.g.,  
is text. Then

$\$\\sqrt{5}\\$$

is a formula

) , and

is text again. Finally,

\emph{instructions to} \la.

The instruction \emph{ is a *command with an argument*, while the instruction \LaTeX is a *command without an argument*. Commands, as a rule, start with a backslash (\ ) and tell  $\text{\LaTeX}$  to do something special. In this case, the command \emph emphasizes its *argument* (the text between the braces). Another kind of instruction to  $\text{\LaTeX}$  is called an *environment*. For instance, the commands

```
\begin{center}
\end{center}
```

enclose a *center* environment; the *contents* (the text typed between these two commands) are centered when typeset.

In practice, text, formulas, and instructions (commands) are mixed. For example,

My first integral: `\int \zeta^2(x) \, dx$.`

is a mixture of all three; it typesets as

My first integral:  $\int \zeta^2(x) dx.$

Creating a document in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X requires that we type in the source file. So we start with the keyboard, proceed to type a short note, and learn some simple rules for typing text in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

## 1.2 The keyboard

The following keys are used to type the source file:

a-z	A-Z	0-9
+ = * / ( ) [ ]		

You can also use the following punctuation marks:

, ; . ? ! : ' ' -

and the space bar, the Tab key, and the Return (or Enter) key.

Finally, there are thirteen special keys that are mostly used in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X commands:

# \$ % & ~ \_ ^ \ { } @ " |

If you need to have these characters typeset in your document, there are commands to produce them. For instance, the dollar sign, \$ is typed as `\$`, the underscore, \_, is typed as `\_`, and the percent sign, %, is typed as `\%`. Only @ requires no special command, type @ to print @; see Sections 3.1.2 and B.4.

There are also commands to produce composite characters, such as accented characters, for example ä, which is typed as `\{a}`. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X prohibits the use of other keys on your keyboard unless you have special support for it. See the text accent table in Sections 3.4.7 and B.2. If you want to use accented characters in your source file, then you must use the `inputenc` package.



**Tip** The text accent table looks formidable. Don't even dream of memorizing it. You will need very few. When you need a text accent, look it up. I know only one: `\{a` (LOL). If you use a name with accented characters, figure out once how to type it, and then any time you need it you can just copy and paste (chances are that the name is in your list of references).

### 1.3 Your first text notes

We start our discussion on how to type a note in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X with a simple example. Suppose you want to use L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X to produce the following:

It is of some concern to me that the terminology used in multi-section math courses is not uniform.

In several sections of the course on matrix theory, the term “hamiltonian-reduced” is used. I, personally, would rather call these “hyper-simple”. I invite others to comment on this problem.

To produce this typeset document, create a new file in your `work` folder with the name `textnote1.tex`. Type the following, including the spacing and linebreaks shown, but not the line numbers:

```

1  % Sample file: textnote1.tex
2  \documentclass{sample}
3
4  \begin{document}
5  It is of some concern to me    that
6  the terminology used in  multi-section
7  math courses is not uniform.
8
9  In several sections of the course on
10 matrix theory, the term
11   ‘‘hamiltonian-reduced’’ is used.
12   I, personally, would rather call these
13   ‘‘hyper-simple’’. I invite others
14   to comment on this  problem.
15  \end{document}
```

Alternatively, copy the `textnote1.tex` file from the `samples` folder (see page 5).

The first line of `textnote1.tex` starts with `%`. Such lines are called *comments* and are ignored by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. Commenting is very useful. For example, if you want to add some notes to your source file and you do not want those notes to appear in the typeset version of your document, begin those lines with a `%`. You can also comment out part of a line:

simply put, we believe % actually, it's not so simple

Everything on the line after the `%` character is ignored by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

Line 2 specifies the *document class*, `sample` (the special class we provided for the sample documents), which controls how the document is formatted.

The text of the note is typed within the *document environment*, that is, between `\begin{document}` and `\end{document}`.

Now typeset `textnote1.tex`. You should get the typeset document as shown. As you can see from this example, L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X is different from a word processor. It disregards the way you input and position the text, and follows only the formatting instructions given by the document class and the markup commands. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X notices when you put a blank space in the text, but it ignores *how many blank spaces* have been typed. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X does not distinguish between a blank space (hitting the space bar), a tab (hitting the Tab key), and a *single* carriage return (hitting Return once). However, hitting Return twice gives a blank line; *one or more* blank lines mark the end of a paragraph. There is also a command for a *new paragraph*: `\par`.

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, by default, fully justifies text by placing a flexible amount of space between words—the *interword space*—and a somewhat larger space between sentences—the *intersentence space*. If you have to force an interword space, you can use the `\_` command (in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X books, we use the symbol  $\sqcup$  to mean a blank space). The `\~` (tilde) command also forces an interword space, but with a difference: it keeps the words on the same line. This command produces a *tie* or *nonbreakable space*.

Note that on lines 11 and 13, the left double quotes is typed as two left single quotes and the right double quote is typed as two right single quotes, apostrophes.

We numbered the lines of the source file for easy reference. Sometimes you may want the same for the typeset file. This is really easy. Just add the two lines

```
\usepackage{lineno}
\linenumbers
```

after the `\documentclass` line and you get:

□

1       It is of some concern to me that the terminology used in multi-section math  
 2       courses is not uniform.  
 3       In several sections of the course on matrix theory, the term “hamiltonian-  
 4       reduced” is used. I, personally, would rather call these “hyper-simple”. I invite  
 5       others to comment on this problem.

□

Next, we produce the following note:

□

January 5, 2015

**From the desk of George Grätzer**

February 7–21 *please* use my temporary e-mail address:

`George_Gratzer@yahoo.com`

□

Type the source file, without the line numbers. Save it in your `work` folder as `textnote2.tex` (`textnote2.tex` can also be found in the `samples` folder):

```

1  % Sample file: textnote2.tex
2  \documentclass{sample}
3
4  \begin{document}
5  \begin{flushright}
6    \today
7  \end{flushright}
8  \textbf{From the desk of George Gr\"{a}tzer}
9
10 February 7--21 \emph{please} use my
11 temporary e-mail address:
12 \begin{center}
13   \texttt{George\_Gratzer@yahoo.com}
14 \end{center}
15 \end{document}
```

This note introduces several additional text features of  $\text{\LaTeX}$ .

- The `\today` command (in line 6) to display the date on which the document is typeset, so you will see a date different from the date shown above in your own typeset document (see also Section 3.4.8).
- The environments to *right justify* (lines 5–7) and *center* (lines 12–14) text.
- The commands to change the text style, including the `\emph` command (line 10) to *emphasize* text, the `\textbf` command (line 8) for **bold** text (text bold font), and the `\texttt` command (line 13) to produce *typewriter style* text. These are *commands with arguments*.
- The form of the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  commands. As we have noted already, almost all  $\text{\LaTeX}$  *commands* start with a backslash (\) followed by the *command name*. For instance, `\textbf` is a command and `textbf` is the command name. The command name is terminated by the first *non-alphabetic character*, that is, by any character other than a–z or A–Z.



**Tip** `textnote2.tex` is a file name but `textbf1` is not a command name. `\textbf1` typesets as 1. Let's look at this a bit more closely. `\textbf` is a valid command. If a command needs an argument and it is not followed by braces, then it takes the next character as its argument. So `\textbf1` is the command `\textbf` with the argument 1; it typesets as 1.

- The multiple role of hyphens: Double hyphens are used for number ranges. For example, 7--21 (in line 10) typesets as 7–21. The punctuation mark – is called an *en dash*. Use triple hyphens for the *em dash* punctuation mark—such as the one in this sentence.
- Special rules for special characters (see Section 1.2), for *accented characters*, and for some *European characters*. For instance, the accented character ä is typed as \"{a}. (But I confess, I always type my name as Gr\"atzer without the braces.)

See Section 3.4 for more detail. In Appendix B, all the text symbols are organized into tables. We also have the `SymbolTables.pdf` in the `samples` folder.



**Tip** Keep `SymbolTables.pdf` handy on your computer!

---

## 1.4 Lines too wide

`LATEX` reads the text in the source file one line at a time and typesets the entire paragraph when the end of a paragraph is reached. Occasionally, `LATEX` gets into trouble when trying to split the paragraph into typeset lines. To illustrate this situation, modify `textnote1.tex`. In the second sentence, replace `term` by `strange term`. Now save this modified file in your `work` folder using the name `textnote1bad.tex` (or copy the file from the `samples` folder).

Typesetting `textnote1bad.tex`, you obtain the following:



It is of some concern to me that the terminology used in multi-section math courses is not uniform.

In several sections of the course on matrix theory, the strange term “hamiltonian-reduced” is used. I, personally, would rather call these “hyper-simple”. I invite others to comment on this problem.



The first line of paragraph two is too wide. In the `log` window, `LATEX` displays the following messages:

```
Overfull \hbox (15.38948pt
too wide) in paragraph at lines 9--15 []\OT1/cmr/m/n/10 In sev-eral
sec-tions of the course on ma-trix the-ory, the strange term
‘‘hamiltonian-
```

It informs you that the typeset version of this paragraph has a line that is 15.38948 points too wide. `LATEX` uses *points* (pt) to measure distances; there are about 72 points in 1 inch. Then it identifies the source of the problem: `LATEX` did not properly hyphenate the word `hamiltonian-reduced` because it (automatically) hyphenates a hyphenated word *only at the hyphen*.

What to do, when a line is too long?



**Tip** Your first line of defense: reword the offending line. Write

The strange term ‘‘hamiltonian-reduced’’ is used  
in several sections of the course on matrix theory.

and the problem goes away.

Your second line of defense: insert one or more *optional hyphen commands* (`\-`), which tell L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X where it can hyphenate the word. Write:

`hamil\--tonian-reduced`

## 1.5 A note with formulas

In addition to the regular text keys and the 13 special keys discussed in Section 1.2, two more keys are used to type formulas: `<` and `>`. The formula  $2 < |x| > y$  (typed as `$2 < |x| > y$`) uses both. Note that such a formula, called *inline*, is enclosed by a pair of `$` symbols.

We begin typesetting formulas with the following note:

In first-year calculus, we define intervals such as  $(u, v)$  and  $(u, \infty)$ . Such an interval is a *neighborhood* of  $a$  if  $a$  is in the interval. Students should realize that  $\infty$  is only a symbol, not a number. This is important since we soon introduce concepts such as  $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} f(x)$ .

When we introduce the derivative

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a},$$

we assume that the function is defined and continuous in a neighborhood of  $a$ .

To create the source file for this mixed text and formula note, create a new document with your text editor. Name it `formulanote.tex`, place it in the `work` folder, and type the following, without the line numbers (or simply copy `formulanote.tex` from the `samples` folder):

```

1  % Sample file: formulanote.tex
2  \documentclass{sample}
3
4  \begin{document}
5  In first-year calculus, we define intervals such
6  as $(u, v)$ and $(u, \infty)$. Such an interval
7  is a \emph{neighborhood} of $a$
```

```

8   if $a$ is in the interval. Students should
9   realize that $\infty$ is only a
10  symbol, not a number. This is important since
11  we soon introduce concepts
12  such as $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} f(x)$.
13
14 When we introduce the derivative
15 \[
16   \lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a},
17 \]
18 we assume that the function is defined and
19 continuous in a neighborhood of $a$.
20 \end{document}

```

This note introduces several basic concepts of formulas in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

- There are two kinds of math formulas and environments in `formulanote.tex`:
  - *Inline* formulas; they open and close with \$ or open with \(` and close with \)`.
  - *Displayed* math environments; they open with \[ and close with \]. (We will introduce many other displayed math environments in Section 1.7 and Chapter 7.)
- L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X uses its own spacing rules within math environments, and completely ignores the white spaces you type, with two exceptions:
  - Spaces that terminate commands. So in \$\infty a\$ the space is not ignored; \$\infty a\$ produces an error.
  - Spaces in the arguments of commands that temporarily revert to regular text. \text is such a command; see Sections 1.6 and 5.4.6.
- The white space that you add when typing formulas is important only for the readability of the source file.
- A math symbol is invoked by a command. For example, the command for  $\infty$  is \infty and the command for  $\rightarrow$  is \rightarrow. The math symbols are organized into tables in Appendix A; see also `SymbolTables.pdf` in the `samples` folder.
- Some commands, such as \sqrt, need *arguments* enclosed by { and }. To typeset  $\sqrt{5}$ , type \$\sqrt{5}\$, where \sqrt is the command and 5 is the argument. Some commands need more than one argument. To get

$$\frac{3+x}{5}$$

type

```
\[
  \frac{3+x}{5}
\]
```

where `\frac` is the command, `3+x` and `5` are the arguments.

- There is no blank line before a displayed formula!



**Tip** Keep in mind that many spaces equal one space in text, whereas your spacing is ignored in formulas, unless the space terminates a command.

---

## 1.6 *The building blocks of a formula*

A formula (inline or displayed) is built from components. We group them as follows:

- Arithmetic
- Binomial coefficients
- Congruences
- Delimiters
- Ellipses
- Integrals
- Math accents
- Matrices
- Operators
- Roots
- Text

In this section, I describe each of these groups, and provide examples illustrating their use. Read carefully the groups you need!

**Arithmetic** We type the arithmetic operations  $a + b$ ,  $a - b$ ,  $-a$ ,  $a/b$ , and  $ab$  in the natural way: `$a + b$`, `$a - b$`, `$-a$`, `$a / b$`, and `$a b$` (the spaces are typed only for readability).

If you wish to use  $\cdot$  or  $\times$  for multiplication, as in  $a \cdot b$  or  $a \times b$ , use `\cdot` or `\times`, respectively. The formulas  $a \cdot b$  and  $a \times b$  are typed as `$a \cdot b$` and `$a \times b$`.

Displayed fractions, such as

$$\frac{1+2x}{x+y+xy}$$

are typed with `\frac`:

```
\[
  \frac{1 + 2x}{x + y + xy}
\]
```

**Subscripts and superscripts** Subscripts are typed with `_` and superscripts with `^` (caret). Subscripts and superscripts should be enclosed in braces, that is, typed between `{` and `}`. To get  $a_1$ , type `$a_{1}$`. Omitting the braces in this example causes no harm, but to get  $a_{10}$ , you *must* type `$a_{10}$`. Indeed, `$a_10$` is typeset as  $a_10$ .

There is one symbol, the prime (`'`), that is automatically superscripted in a formula. To get  $f'(x)$ , just type `$f'(x)$`. (On many keyboards, the symbol on the key looks like this: ```)

See Section 5.4.1 for more detail.

**Binomial coefficients** Binomial coefficients are typeset with the `\binom` command. `\binom{a}{b+c}` is here inline:  $\binom{a}{b+c}$ , whereas

$$\binom{a}{b+c}$$

is the displayed version.

See Section 5.4.2 for more detail.

**Congruences** The two most important forms are

$a \equiv v \pmod{\theta}$	typed as	<code>\$a \equiv v \pmod{\theta}\$</code>
$a \equiv v \pmod{\theta}$	typed as	<code>\$a \equiv v \pod{\theta}\$</code>

See Section 5.6.2 for more detail.

**Delimiters** Parentheses and square brackets are examples of delimiters. They are used to delimit some subformulas, as in `$[(a*b)+(c*d)]^2$`, which typesets as  $[(a * b) + (c * d)]^2$ . L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X can be instructed to expand them vertically to enclose a formula such as

$$\left( \frac{1+x}{2+y^2} \right)^2$$

which is typed as

```
\[
  \left( \frac{1+x}{2+y^2} \right)^2
\]
```

The `\left(` and `\right)` commands tell L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X to size the parentheses correctly, relative to the size of the formula inside the parentheses; sometimes the result is pleasing, sometimes not.

We dedicate Section 5.5 to this topic.

**Ellipses** In a formula, the ellipsis is printed either as *low* (or *on-the-line*) *dots*:

$F(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  is typed as `$F(x_{1}, \dots, x_{n})$`

or as *centered dots*:

$x_1 + \cdots + x_n$  is typed as

`$x_{1} + \cdots + x_{n}$`

Use `\cdots` and `\ldots` if `\dots` does not work as expected.

See Section 5.4.3 for more detail.

**Integrals** The command for an integral is `\int`. The lower limit is specified as a subscript and the upper limit is specified as a superscript. For example, the formula  $\int_0^\pi \sin x \, dx = 2$  is typed as

`$\int_{0}^{\pi} \sin x \, dx = 2$`

where `\,` is a spacing command.

The formula looks bad without the spacing command:  $\int_0^\pi \sin x \, dx = 2$ .

See Section 5.4.4 for more complicated integrals.

**Math accents** The four most frequently used math accents are:

$\bar{a}$  typed as `$\bar{a}$`       $\hat{a}$  typed as `$\hat{a}$`

$\tilde{a}$  typed as `$\tilde{a}$`       $\vec{a}$  typed as `$\vec{a}$`

See Section 5.7 for more detail. See Sections 5.7 and A.8 for complete lists.

**Matrices** You type the matrix

$$\begin{matrix} a+b+c & uv & x-y & 27 \\ a+b & u+v & z & 134 \end{matrix}$$

with the `\matrix` command

```
\[
\begin{matrix}
a+b+c & uv & x-y & 27 \\
a+b & u+v & z & 134
\end{matrix}
\]
```

The `matrix` environment separates adjacent matrix elements within a row with ampersands. Rows are *separated* by new line commands, `\\"`.



**Tip** Do not end the last row with a new line command.

The `matrix` environment has to appear within a formula, as a rule, in a displayed formula. It can be used in the `align` environment discussed in Sections 1.7.3 and 7.5.

The `matrix` environment does not provide delimiters. Several variants do, including `pmatrix` and `vmatrix`. For example,

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a + b + c & uv \\ a + b & u + v \end{pmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} 30 & 7 \\ 3 & 17 \end{vmatrix}$$

is typed as follows:

```
\[
\mathbf{A} =
\begin{pmatrix}
a + b + c & uv \\
a + b & u + v
\end{pmatrix}
\begin{vmatrix}
30 & 7 \\
3 & 17
\end{vmatrix}
\]
```

As you can see, `pmatrix` typesets as a `matrix` between a pair of `\left(` and `\right)` commands, while `vmatrix` typesets as a `matrix` between a pair of `\left|` and `\right|` commands. There is also `bmatrix` for square brackets.

See Section 7.7.1 for a listing of all the matrix variants and Sections 5.5 and A.6 for lists of delimiters.

**Operators** To typeset the sine function, `sin x`, type `\sin x`. Note that `$sin x$` would be typeset as `sinx`—how awful. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X calls `\sin` an *operator*. Sections 5.6 and A.7 list a number of operators. Some are just like `\sin`. Others produce a more complex display, for example,

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x) = 0$$

is typed as

```
\[
  \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x) = 0
\]
```

See Section 5.6 for more detail.

**Large operators** The command for *sum* is `\sum` and for *product* is `\prod`. The following two examples:

$$\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 \quad \prod_{i=1}^n x_i^2$$

are typed as

```
\[
  \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 \quad \prod_{i=1}^n x_i^2
\]
```

Sum and product are examples of *large operators*. They are typeset larger in displayed math than in an inline formula. They are listed in Sections 5.6.3 and A.7.1. See Section 5.6.3 for more detail.

**Roots** `\sqrt` produces a square root. `\sqrt{a + 2b}` typesets as  $\sqrt{a + 2b}$ . The  $n$ -th root,  $\sqrt[n]{5}$ , requires the use of an *optional argument*, which is specified in brackets: `\sqrt[n]{5}`. See Section 5.4.5.

**Text** You can include text in a formula with a `\text` command. For instance,

$$a = b, \quad \text{by assumption},$$

is typed as

```
\[
  a = b, \text{\quad by assumption},
\]
```

where `\quad` is a spacing command.

See Section 5.4.6 for more detail.

## 1.7 Displayed formulas

### 1.7.1 Equations

The `equation` environment creates a displayed formula and automatically generates an equation number. The equation

$$(1) \quad \int_0^\pi \sin x \, dx = 2$$

is typed as

```
\begin{equation}\label{E:firstIntegral}
  \int_0^{\pi} \sin x \, dx = 2
\end{equation}
```

The equation number, which is automatically generated, depends on how many numbered displayed formulas occur before the given equation. You can choose to have equations numbered within each section—(1.1), (1.2), …, in Section 1; (2.1), (2.2), …, in Section 2; and so on—by including, in the preamble (see Sections 1.8 and 5.3), the command

```
\numberwithin{equation}{section}
```

You can choose to have the equation numbers on the right; see the `reqno` option of the `amsart` document class in Section 10.1.2.

The `equation*` environment is the same as the displayed formula opened with `\[` and closed with `\]` we discussed in Section 1.5. Sometimes you may want to use `equation*` for the ease of deleting the `*`s if you wish.

### 1.7.2 *Symbolic referencing*

To reference a formula without having to remember a number—which can change when you edit your document—give the equation a symbolic label by using the `\label` command and refer to the equation in your document by using the symbolic label, the argument of the `\label` command. In this example, I have called the first equation `firstIntegral`, and used the convention that the label of an equation starts with `E:`, so that the complete `\label` command is `\label{E:firstIntegral}`.

The number of this formula is referenced with the `\ref` command. Its page is referenced using the `\pageref` command. For example, to get

└ see (1) on page 18.

type (see Sections 1.3 and Section 3.4.3 for `~`)

`see~(\ref{E:firstIntegral}) on page~\pageref{E:firstIntegral}.`

The `\eqref` command provides the reference number in parentheses. So the last example could be typed

`see~\eqref{E:firstIntegral} on page~\pageref{E:firstIntegral}.`

The `\eqref` command is smart. Even if the equation number is referenced in emphasized or italicized text, the reference typesets upright (in roman type).

The main advantage of this cross-referencing system is that when you add, delete, or rearrange equations, L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X automatically renames the equations and adjusts the

references that appear in your typeset document. For bibliographic references, L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X uses the `\bibitem` command to define a bibliographic item and the `\cite` command to cite it.



**Tip** For renumbering to work, you have to typeset **twice**.

---



**Tip** It is a good idea to check the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X warnings periodically in the log file. If you forget to typeset the source file twice when necessary, L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X issues a warning.

---

What happens if you misspell a reference, e.g., typing `\ref{E:FirstIntegral}` instead of `\ref{E:firstIntegral}`? L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X typesets **??**. There are two warnings in the log file:

```
LaTeX Warning: Reference ‘E:FirstIntegral’ on page 39
              undefined on input line 475.
```

for the typeset page and the other one close to the end:

```
LaTeX Warning: There were undefined references.
```

If the argument of `\cite` is misspelled, you get **[?]** and similar warnings.  
Check the **Tip** on page 70.

### *Absolute referencing*

Equations can also be *tagged* by attaching a name to the formula with the `\tag` command. The tag replaces the equation number.

For example,

$$(Int) \quad \int_0^{\pi} \sin x \, dx = 2$$

is typed as

```
\begin{equation}
\int_0^{\pi} \sin x \, dx = 2 \tag{Int}
\end{equation}
```

Tags are *absolute*. This equation is *always* referred to as (Int). Equation numbers, on the other hand, are *relative*, they may change when the file is edited.

### 1.7.3 Aligned formulas

$\text{\LaTeX}$  has many ways to typeset multiline formulas. We discuss three constructs in this section: *simple alignment*, *annotated alignment*, and *cases*. For more constructs, see Chapter 7.

For simple and annotated alignment we use the `align` environment. Each line in the `align` environment is a separate equation, which  $\text{\LaTeX}$  automatically numbers.

#### Simple alignment

Simple alignment is used to align two or more formulas. To obtain the formulas

$$(2) \quad r^2 = s^2 + t^2,$$

$$(3) \quad 2u + 1 = v + w^\alpha.$$

type the following, using `\backslash\backslash` as the *line separator* and `&` as the *alignment point*:

```
\begin{align}
r^{2} &= s^{2} + t^{2}, & \label{E:Pyth} \\ 
2u + 1 &= v + w^{\alpha}. & \label{E:alpha}
\end{align}
```

Figure 1.1 may help visualize the placements of the ampersands.



**Tip** In this displayed formula, `\backslash\backslash` is a *line separator*, not a new line command. Do not place a `\backslash\backslash` to terminate the last line!

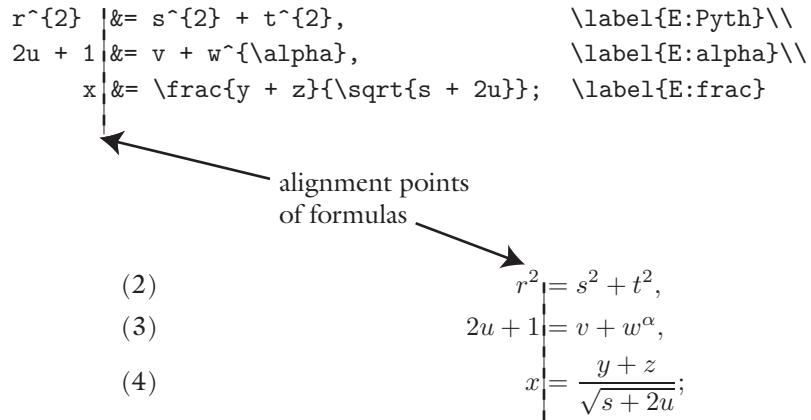


Figure 1.1: Simple alignment: source and typeset.

These formulas are numbered (2) and (3) because they are preceded by one numbered equation earlier in this section.

The `align` environment can also be used to break a long formula into two or more parts. Since numbering both lines in such a case would be undesirable, you can prevent the numbering of the second line by using the `\notag` command in the second part of the formula. For example,

$$(4) \quad h(x) = \int \left( \frac{f(x) + g(x)}{1 + f^2(x)} + \frac{1 + f(x)g(x)}{\sqrt{1 - \sin x}} \right) dx \\ = \int \frac{1 + f(x)}{1 + g(x)} dx - 2 \tan^{-1}(x - 2)$$

is typed as follows:

```
\begin{align}
h(x) &= \int \left( \frac{f(x) + g(x)}{1 + f^2(x)} + \frac{1 + f(x)g(x)}{\sqrt{1 - \sin x}} \right) \\
&\quad \left. dx \right\} \label{E:longInt} \\\% \eqref{E:longInt}
&= \int \frac{1 + f(x)}{1 + g(x)} dx \\
&\quad - 2 \tan^{-1}(x-2) \notag
\end{align}
```

The rules for simple alignment are easy to remember.

### Rule ■ Simple alignments

- Use the `align` environment.
- Separate the lines with `\backslash\backslash`.
- In each line, indicate the alignment point with `&`, one `&` per line. If the alignment point is adjacent to an `=`, `+`, and so on, place the `&` before to ensure proper spacing.
- Place a `\notag` command in each line that you do not wish numbered.
- If no line should be numbered, use the `align*` environment.
- Place a `\label` command in each numbered line you can want to reference with `\ref`, `\eqref`, or `\pageref`.

### Annotated alignment

*Annotated alignment* allows you to align formulas and their annotations, that is, explanatory text, separately:

$$\begin{aligned}
 (5) \qquad x &= x \wedge (y \vee z) && \text{(by distributivity)} \\
 &= (x \wedge y) \vee (x \wedge z) && \text{(by condition (M))} \\
 &= y \vee z
 \end{aligned}$$

This is typed as

```
\begin{aligned}
x &= x \wedge (y \vee z) \\
&\quad \&\&\text{(by distributivity)}\}\label{E:Align}\%\eqref{E:Align}\backslash\\
&= (x \wedge y) \vee (x \wedge z) \\
&\quad \&\&\text{(by condition (M))}\}\notag\backslash\\
&= y \vee z \notag
\end{aligned}
```

Figure 1.2 may help visualize the placements of the ampersands.

---

### Rule ■ Annotated alignment

The rules for annotated alignment are similar to the rules of simple alignment. In each line, in addition to the alignment point marked by `&`, there is also a mark for the start of the annotation: `&&`.

---

#### 1.7.4 Cases

The `cases` construct is a specialized matrix. It has to appear within a math environment such as the `equation` environment or the `align` environment. Here is a typical example:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -x^2, & \text{if } x < 0; \\ \alpha + x, & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1; \\ x^2, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

It is typed as follows:

```
\[
f(x)=
\begin{cases}
-x^{2}, & \&\text{if \$x < 0\$;}\backslash\\
\alpha + x, & \&\text{if \$0 \leq x \leq 1\$;}\backslash\\
\end{cases}
```

```

x^{2},           &\text{otherwise.}\\
\end{cases}\\
\]

```

The rules for using the `cases` environment are the same as for matrices. Separate the lines with `\backslash` and indicate the annotation with `&`.

## 1.8 The anatomy of a document

To begin, we use the sample document `firstarticle.tex` (in the `samples` folder) to examine the anatomy of a document.

Every `LATeX` document has two parts, the preamble and the body. The *preamble* of a document is everything from the first line of the source file down to the line

```
\begin{document}
```

The *body* is the contents of the `document` environment. For a schematic view of a document, see Figure 1.3.

The preamble contains instructions affecting the entire document. The *only* required command in the preamble is the `\documentclass` command. There are other commands (such as the `\usepackage` commands, see Section 8.2) that must be placed in the preamble if they are used, but such commands do not have to be present in every document.

Here is the preamble and top matter of `firstarticle`:

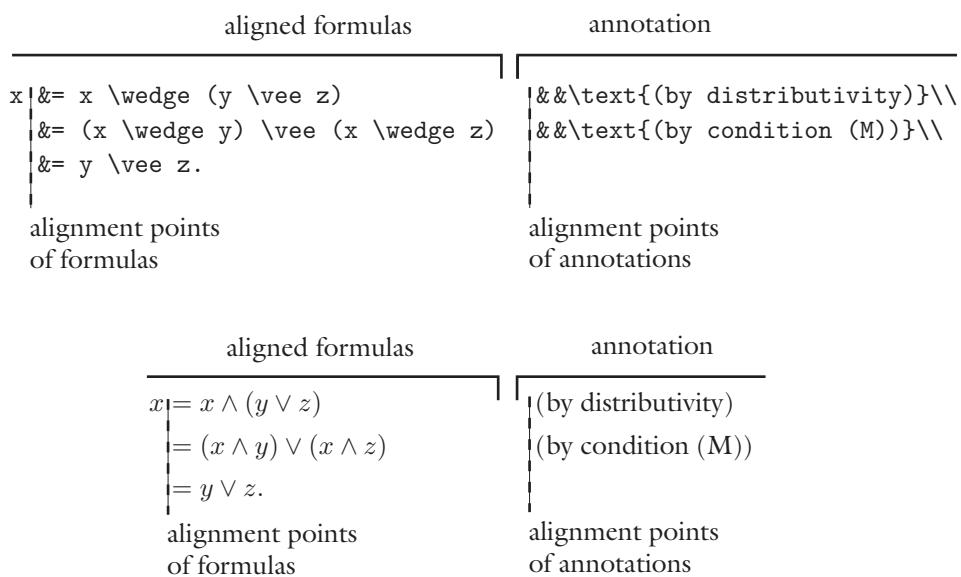


Figure 1.2: Annotated alignment: source and typeset.

```
%First document, firstarticle.tex
\documentclass{amsart}
\usepackage{amssymb, latexsym}

\newtheorem{theorem}{Theorem}

\begin{document}
\title{A technical result\\ for congruences of finite lattices}
\author{G. Gr\"atzer}
\address{Department of Mathematics\\
University of Manitoba\\
Winnipeg, MB R3T 2N2\\
Canada}
\email[G. Gr\"atzer]{gratzer@me.com}
\urladdr[G. Gr\"atzer]{http://tinyurl.com/gratzerhomepage}
\date{March 21, 2015}
```

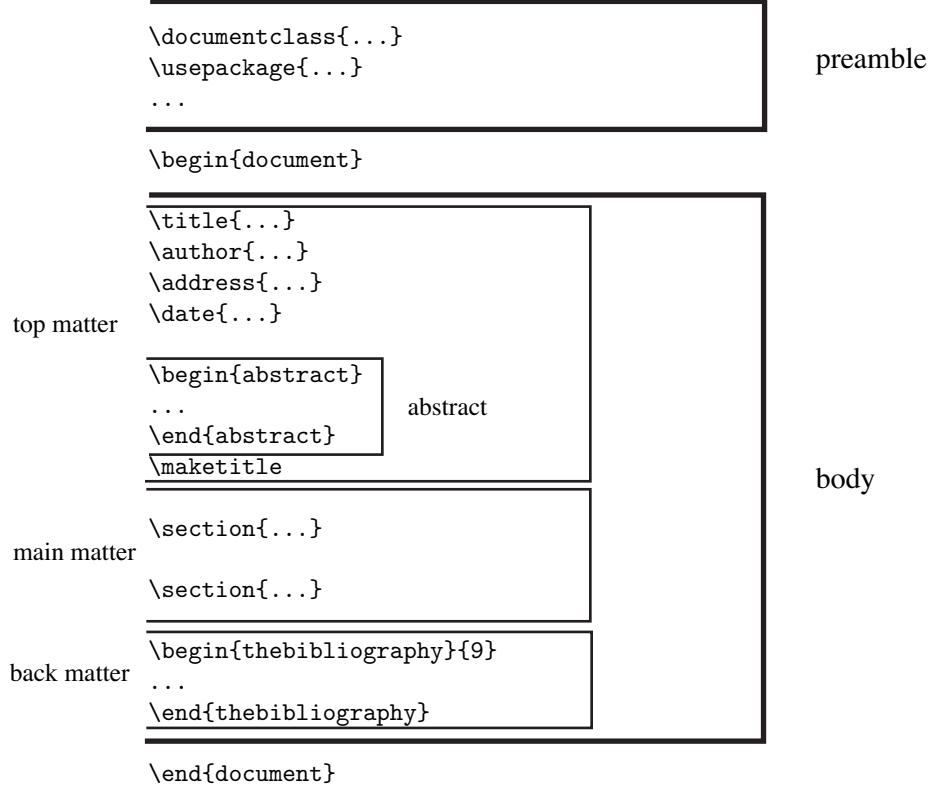


Figure 1.3: A schematic view of a document.

```
\subjclass[2010]{Primary: 06B10.}
\keywords{finite lattice, congruence.}
\maketitle

\begin{abstract}
We present a technical result for congruences on finite lattices.
\end{abstract}
```

You find the source file, `firstarticle.tex`, in the `samples` folder and the typeset document on page 4.

To simplify the discussion in Part I, we discuss only one document class for articles: `amsart`. You may come across its predecessor, `article`, which handles a limited set of commands for the preamble and the top matter and displays them differently. We shall discuss in detail the `amsart` document class in Chapter 9. For the `article` document class, see Section 10.1.

## 1.9 Your own commands

Over time, L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X can be adjusted to fit your needs. You add packages to enable L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X to do new things (such as the `graphicx` package, see Sections 1.10 and 8.4.3) and introduce your own commands to facilitate typing and make the source file more readable.

We can add two new commands to the sample article `firstarticle.tex`:

```
\newcommand{\pdelta}{\pmod{\delta}}
\DeclareMathOperator{\length}{length}
```

So instead of

`$x \equiv y \pmod{\delta}$+`

we can type

`$x \equiv y \pdelta$`

and instead of `length\,$U$`, we can type `\length U$` (see Section 14.1.6). Notice how the spacing is now done by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X!

We'll dedicate Chapter 14 to customizing L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

## 1.10 Adding an illustration

“And what is the use of a book,” thought Alice, “without pictures or conversations?” I am not sure what to suggest about conversations, but illustrations we can tackle with ease. Let us add an illustration, `covers.pdf` to `firstarticle`. First, add

```
\usepackage{graphicx}
```

as the fourth line of the document, to the preamble. This will enable L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X to tackle illustrations. Secondly, add the following lines to `firstarticle.tex`, say, as the second paragraph of the introduction:

```
\begin{figure}[hbt]
{\centering\includegraphics{covers}}
\caption{Theorem~\ref{T:technical} illustrated}\label{F:Theorem}
\end{figure}
```

We place the illustration `covers.pdf` in the same folder as `firstarticle.tex`. That's it. You find `covers.pdf` and `firstarticleill.tex` in the `samples` folder.



**Tip** Make sure that the `\label` command follows the `\caption` command! You may have hard to explain troubles otherwise.

---

See Section 8.4.3 for more information.

Most people in my field used the vector graphics application Adobe Illustrator to produce the PDF files for illustrations. Quite recently, it became prohibitively expensive. Luckily, many reasonably priced alternatives are available. In Chapter 13, we discuss an alternative, TikZ, built for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. Inkspace is an alternative, available for all platforms.

## 1.11 The anatomy of a presentation

Chances are, one of your first exposures to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X was watching a *presentation*. The presenter used a pdf document produced by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X and opened it with Adobe Reader. He went from “slide” to “slide” by pressing the space bar. Figures 1.4 and Figure 1.5 show four slides of a presentation.

In L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, you use a presentation package—really, a document class—to prepare the PDF file. We use Till Tantau's BEAMER.

Here are the first few lines—the preamble and the Title slide—of the source file of our sample presentation, `firstpresentation.tex` (see `firstpresentation.tex` in the `samples` folder, along with `Louisville.tex`, the full presentation):

```
\documentclass[leqno]{beamer}
\usepackage{Warsaw}

\DeclareMathOperator{\Princ}{Princ}

\begin{document}
\title{The order of principal congruences}
\author{G. Gr\"atzer}
\date{}
\maketitle
```

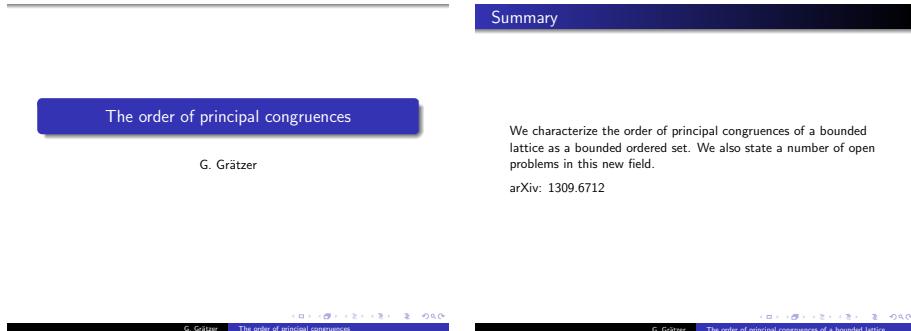


Figure 1.4: The Title slide (Slide 1) and Slide 2

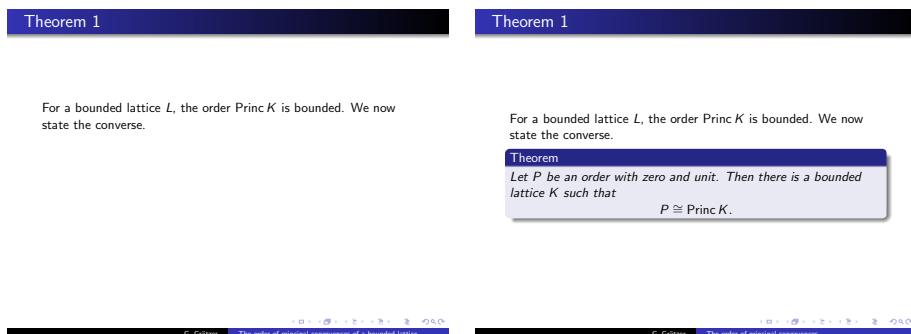


Figure 1.5: Slides 3 and 4

\usepackage{Warsaw} provides a flavor. It is followed by the Title slide, providing the title and the author.

The \title command may be longer, it may contain all the additional information you may want to display. Here is the \title command of Louisville.tex:

```
\title[The order of principal congruences of a bounded lattice]
{The order of principal congruences\\
of a bounded lattice.\\
AMS Fall Southeastern Sectional Meeting\\
University of Louisville, Louisville, KY\\
October 5–6, 2013}
```

Note that the \title has two parts. The first, in [], is the short title, repeated in the bottom line on every slide. The second, in {}, is the title for the front page.

The rest of the presentation source file is divided into two *frames* with the structure:

```
\begin{frame}
\frametitle{}
\end{frame}
```

Each frame produces a “slide” (or more). Here is the first frame:

```
\begin{frame}
\frametitle{Summary}
We characterize the order of principal congruences
of a bounded lattice
as a bounded ordered set.
We also state a number of open problems in this new field.
\medskip
```

```
arXiv: 1309.6712
\end{frame}
```

The command `\frametitle` gives the slide its title: Summary, see Slide 2 in Figure 1.4. In the body of the `frame`, you type regular L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

To produce Slides 3 and 4, it would be natural to try

```
\begin{frame}
\frametitle{Theorem 1}
For a bounded lattice  $\$L\$$ , the order  $\$\\Princ K\$$  is bounded.
We now state the converse.
\end{frame}
```

```
\begin{frame}
\frametitle{Theorem 1}
For a bounded lattice  $\$L\$$ , the order  $\$\\Princ K\$$  is bounded.
We now state the converse.
\begin{theorem}
Let  $\$P\$$  be an order with zero and unit.
Then there is a bounded lattice  $\$K\$$  such that
\[
P \cong \Princ K.
\]
If  $\$P\$$  is finite, we can construct  $\$K\$$  as a finite lattice.
\end{theorem}
\end{frame}
```

which produces the two frames of Figure 1.6.

This is really jarring to watch. The two lines of the new Slide 3 jump up more than two lines as they transition to Slide 4.

Here is how we produce Slides 3 and 4 of Figure 1.5:

The figure shows two Beamer slides. Both slides have a dark blue header bar with the text "Theorem 1". The first slide contains the text: "For a bounded lattice  $L$ , the order  $\text{Princ } K$  is bounded. We now state the converse." The second slide contains the text: "For a bounded lattice  $L$ , the order  $\text{Princ } K$  is bounded. We now state the converse." Below the text on the second slide is a box containing the theorem statement: "Theorem Let  $P$  be an order with zero and unit. Then there is a bounded lattice  $K$  such that  $P \cong \text{Princ } K$ . If  $P$  is finite, we can construct  $K$  as a finite lattice." At the bottom of each slide are Beamer navigation icons.

Figure 1.6: Slides 3 and 4, first try

```
\begin{frame}
\frametitle{Theorem 1}
For a bounded lattice $L$, the order $\text{Princ } K$ is bounded.
We now state the converse.
\pause
\begin{theorem}
Let $P$ be an order with zero and unit.
Then there is a bounded lattice~$K$ such that
\[
P \cong \text{Princ } K.
\]
If $P$ is finite, we can construct $K$ as a finite lattice.
\end{theorem}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
```

There is only one new command to learn: `\pause`; it produces from this frame **two** slides.

The `\pause` in this frame splits the contents of the frame into two parts. The first slide is typeset from the first part as if the second part was also present. The second slide is typeset from both parts. So the transition from the first slide to the second is smooth, see Figure 1.5.

You can have more than one `\pause` in a frame. Use `\pause` also to display a list one item at a time.

Chapter 12 discusses BEAMER in more detail.

---

*And  
a few more things...*

If life was perfect, we would not need this chapter. You would write perfect L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, based on Chapter 1, no need to study how L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X works, what error messages mean... But life is not perfect, you will make mistakes, L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X will send messages, plain and mysterious.

In this chapter, we briefly explain how things work, the structure of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, the auxiliary files, the logical and visual design of an article, L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X error messages. See Appendix C for more detail. Finally, we present a long list of dos and don't to help you write good L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

## 2.1 Structure

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's core is a programming language called T<sub>E</sub>X, created by Donald E. Knuth, which provides low-level typesetting instructions. T<sub>E</sub>X comes with a set of fonts called *Computer Modern* (CM). The CM fonts and the T<sub>E</sub>X programming language form the foundation of a typical T<sub>E</sub>X system. T<sub>E</sub>X is extensible—new commands can be defined in terms of more basic ones. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X is one of the best known extensions of T<sub>E</sub>X.

The visual layout of a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X document is primarily determined by the *document class*, such as `amsart`, `article` for articles, `amsbook`, `book` for books. Many journals,

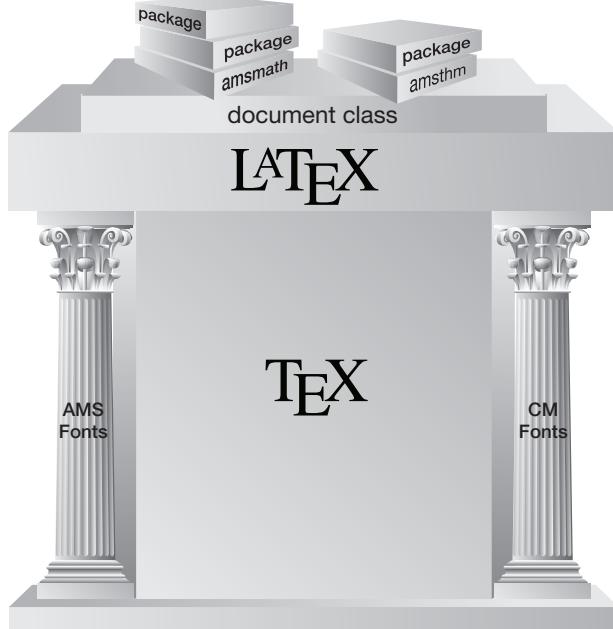


Figure 2.1: The structure of  $\text{\LaTeX}$ .

publishers, and schools have their own document classes for formatting articles, books, and theses.

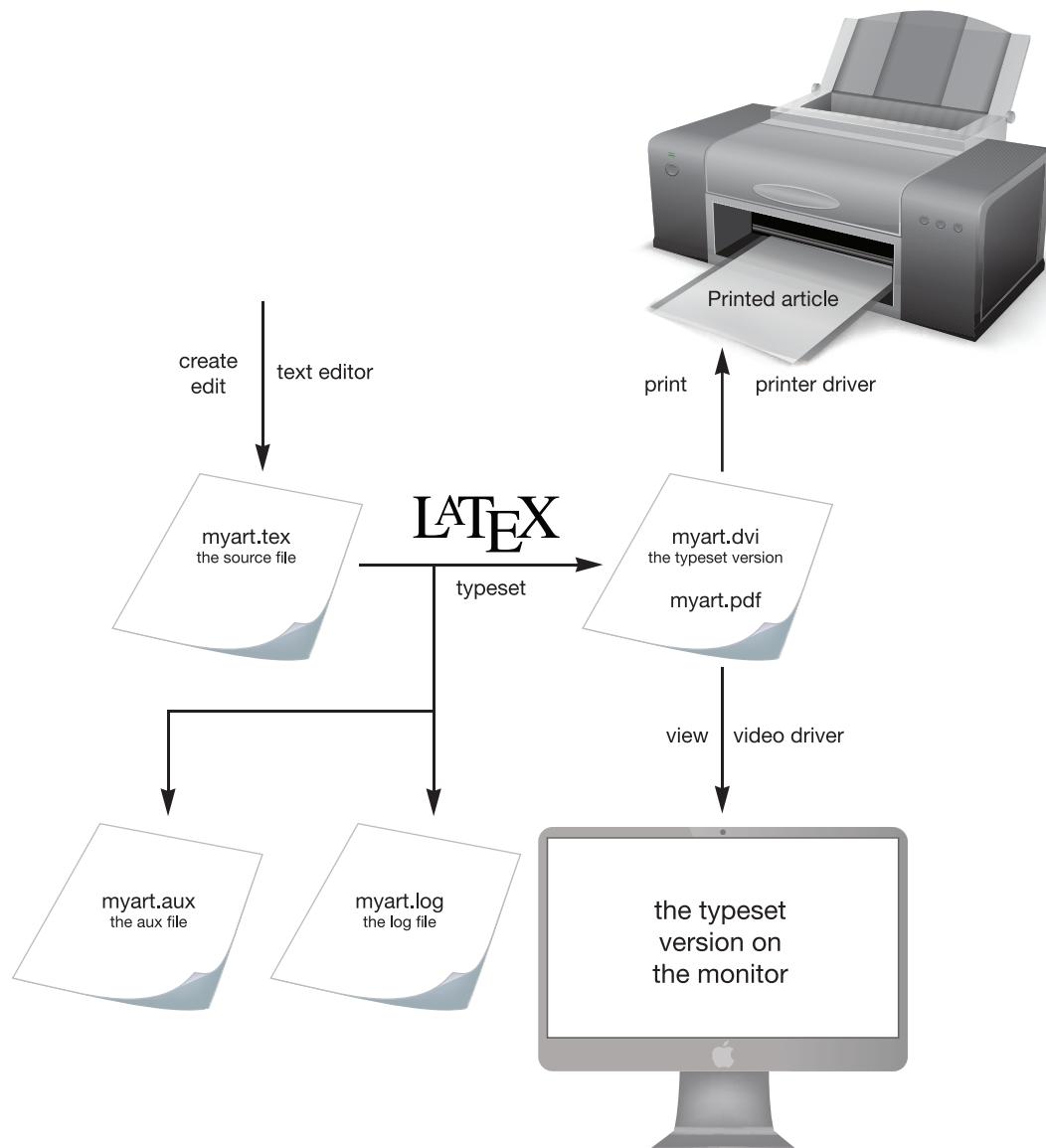
Extensions of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  are called *packages*. They provide additional functionality by adding new commands and environments, or by changing the way previously defined commands and environments work. It is essential that you find the packages that make your work easier. *The  $\text{\LaTeX}$  Companion*, 2nd edition [56] discusses a large number of the most useful packages as of 2004.

The structure of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  is illustrated in Figure 2.1. This figure suggests that in order to work with a  $\text{\LaTeX}$  document, you first have to install  $\text{\TeX}$  and the CM fonts, then  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , and finally specify the document class and the necessary packages. The packages must include *amsmath*, *amsthm*, and so on. Of course, your  $\text{\LaTeX}$  installation already includes all of these.

## 2.2 Auxiliary files

Figure 2.2 illustrates the steps in the production of a typeset document.

You start by opening an existing  $\text{\LaTeX}$  source file or creating a new one with a text editor. For this discussion, the source file is called `myart.tex`. Once the source file is ready, you typeset it. Depending on the document class options you choose and the packages the document loads, you end up with at least three additional files:

Figure 2.2: Using  $\text{\LaTeX}$ .

1. `myart.pdf` The typeset article in PDF format.
2. `myart.aux` The auxiliary file, used by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X for internal bookkeeping, including cross-references and bibliographic citations.
3. `myart.log` The log file. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X records the typesetting session in the log file, including any warnings and messages that appear on your monitor in the log window.

Your computer uses a *video driver* to display the typeset article on your monitor and a *printer driver* to print the typeset article on a printer. The video and printer drivers are computer and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X implementation dependent.

It should be emphasized that of the three applications used, only one is the same for all computers and all implementations.

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X always uses the aux file from the last typesetting. Here is an example. Your article has Theorems 1 (with \label{T:first}) and 2 (with \label{T:main}). The aux file has the two lines:

```
\newlabel{T:first}{{1}{1}}
\newlabel{T:main}{{2}{1}}
```

\newlabel{T:first}{{1}{1}} means that the label T:first is assigned the value 1 and appears on page 1. \newlabel{T:main}{{2}{1}} means that the label T:main is assigned the value 2 and appears on page 1. So the reference

see Theorems \ref{T:first} and \ref{T:first}.

is typeset as

see Theorems 1 and 2.

Now add a new theorem between Theorems 1 and 2. Typeset the article. In the typeset article, the three theorems are properly numbered, but it still contains the same typeset line:

see Theorems 1 and 2.

The aux file has the lines:

```
\newlabel{T:first}{{1}{1}}
\newlabel{T:main}{{3}{1}}
```

So at the next typesetting, the reference is displayed as

see Theorems 1 and 3.

## 2.3 Logical and visual design

The typeset version of `firstarticle.tex` looks impressive on p. 4. To produce such articles, you need to understand that there are two aspects of article design: *visual* and *logical*.

As an example, let us look at a theorem from `firstarticle.tex` (see the typeset form of the theorem on page 4). You tell L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X that you want to state a theorem by using a `theorem` environment:

```
\begin{theorem}\label{T:technical}
Let $L$ be a finite lattice.

...
\end{theorem}
```

The logical part of the design is choosing to define a theorem by placing material inside a `theorem` environment. For the visual design, L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X makes hundreds of decisions. Could you have specified all of the spacing, font size changes, centering, numbering, and so on? Maybe, but would you *want* to? And would you want to repeat that process for every theorem in your document?

Even if you did, you would have spent a great deal of time and energy on the *visual design* of the theorem rather than on the *logical design* of your article. The idea behind L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X is that you should concentrate on what you have to say and let L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X take care of the visual design.

This approach allows you to easily alter the visual design by changing the document class (or its options, see Sections 9.5, 10.1.2, and 17.1). Section 9.1 provides some examples. If you code the visual design into the article—hard coding it, as a programmer would say—such changes are much harder to accomplish, for you and for the journal publishing the article.

For more on this topic, see Section C.4.

## 2.4 General error messages

Now that you are ready to type your first document, we give you some pointers on using L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

You will probably make a number of mistakes in your first document. These mistakes fall into the following categories:

1. Typographical errors, which L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X blindly typesets.
2. Errors in formulas or in the formatting of the text.
3. Errors in your instructions to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, that is, in commands and environments.

Typographical errors can be corrected by viewing and spell checking the source file, finding the errors, and then editing the typeset file. Mistakes in the second and

third categories may trigger errors during the typesetting process, such as lines too wide of Section 1.4.

We now look at some examples of the third class of errors by deliberately introducing a number of mistakes into `firstarticle.tex` and examining the messages.

**Experiment 1.** In `firstarticle.tex`, go to line 19 (use the Go to Line command of your editor) and remove the closing brace so that it reads `\begin{abstract`

When you typeset `firstarticle.tex`,  $\text{\LaTeX}$  reports a problem:

```
fabstract We present a technical result for congruences on\ETC.
./firstarticle.tex:23:
Paragraph ended before \begin was complete.
<to be read again>
        \par
1.23
```

Line 23 of the file is the line after `\maketitle`. The message informs you that the environment name was not completed.

`Runaway argument?` is a message that comes up often. It means that the argument of a command is either longer than expected or it contains material the argument cannot accept. Most often a closing brace solves the problem, as in this experiment.

**Experiment 2.** Now restore line 19, then go to line 21 and change `\end{abstract}` to `\end{abstrac}` and typeset again.  $\text{\LaTeX}$  informs you of another error:

```
./firstarticle.tex:21: LaTeX Error: \begin{abstract}
on input line 19 ended by \end{abstrac}.
```

See the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  manual or  $\text{\LaTeX}$  Companion for explanation.  
Type H <return> for immediate help.

```
...
1.21 \end{abstrac}
```

This is perfect.  $\text{\LaTeX}$  correctly analyzes the problem and tells you where to make the change.

**Experiment 3.** Correct the error in line 21, and introduce a new error in line 61. This line reads

```
z_1 \equiv y+ w \pmod{\delta}.
```

Change `\delta` to `\deta`. Now, when you typeset the document,  $\text{\LaTeX}$  reports

```
./firstarticle.tex:61: Undefined control sequence.
<argument> {\operator@font mod}\mkern 6mu\deta
```

```
1.61 z_1 \equiv y+ w \pmod{\deta}
```

This mistake is easy to identify: `\deta` is a misspelling of `\delta`.

**Experiment 4.** In line 38, delete the closing brace of the `\label` command. This results in a message:

```
Runaway definition?
->E:cover\text {If $x$ is covered by $y,z \in L$ and\ETC.
! File ended while scanning definition of \df@label.
<inserted text>
}
<*> firstarticle.tex
```

Undo the change to line 38.

**Experiment 5.** Add a blank line following line 61:

```
x+ z = z + z_1 \equiv z + (y+ w) = y+ z \pmod{\delta},
```

This change results in the message

```
./firstarticle.tex:62: Missing $ inserted.
<inserted text>
$
1.62
```

There can be no blank lines within a displayed math environment.  $\text{\LaTeX}$  catches the mistake, but the message itself is misleading.

**Experiment 6.** Add a \$ before `\pmod` in line 61 (such an error often occurs when cutting and pasting a formula). You get the message:

```
./firstarticle.tex:61: Display math should end with $$.
<to be read again>
          \penalty
1.61 z_1 \equiv y+ w \$\pmod{\delta}
```

Maybe this could be more to the point?



**Tip**  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 's messages are not very useful with displayed formulas. Comment out some of the lines to try to localize the problem.



**Tip** Typeset often.

Typesetting my book *First Steps into  $\text{\LaTeX}$*  with the closing brace of the first `\caption` command on line 480 of the source file missing, I get the error message

```
! Text line contains an invalid character.
1.1227 ...pletely irreducible^^?
```

where the reference is to line 1227, about 700 lines removed from the actual error. However, if the only thing I did before typesetting was to insert that figure with its incorrect caption command, at least I would know where to look for errors. If you make a dozen changes and then typeset, you may not know where to start.

## 2.5 Errors in math

Even in such a simple note there are opportunities for errors. To help familiarize yourself with some of the most commonly seen L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X errors in formulas, we introduce mistakes into `formulanote.tex`.

**Experiment 1** In line 6 of `formulanote.tex`, delete the third \$ symbol; save the file under the name `formulanotebad1.tex` in the work folder.

Typeset `formulanotebad1.tex`. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X generates the following message:

```
! Missing $ inserted.
<inserted text>
$
1.6 as $(u, v)$ and (u, \infty
)$. Such an interval
```

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X reads (u, \infty) as text; but the \infty command instructs L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X to typeset a math symbol, which can only be done in a formula. So L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X offers to put a \$ in front of \infty while typesetting the source file—it does not put the \$ in the source file itself. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X attempts a cure, but in this example it comes too late, because the formula *should* start just before (u.

**Experiment 2** In line 16 of `formulanote.tex`, delete the second } symbol and save it under the name `formulanotebad2.tex` in the work folder. This introduces an error: the closing brace of the subscript (see page 15) is missing. Now typeset the note. You get the message

```
Missing } inserted.
<inserted text>
}
1.12 such as $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} f(x)$
```

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X reports that a closing brace (}) is missing, but it is not sure where the brace should be. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X noticed that a subscript started with {, but it reached the end of the formula before finding a closing brace }). To remedy this, you must look in the formula for an opening brace { that is not balanced, and insert the missing closing brace }. Make the necessary change and typeset again to view the difference.

**Experiment 3** In `mathnote.tex`, delete the two \$ signs in line 19, that is, replace `$a$` by `a`. Typeset the file. It typesets with no errors. Here is the last line of the typeset file you get:

we assume that the function is defined and continuous in a neighborhood of `a`.

instead of

we assume that the function is defined and continuous in a neighborhood of `a`.

This is probably the error most often made by beginners. There is no message by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X and the typeset version looks good. Notice the difference in the shape of the letter `a` in the two cases. You need sharp eyes to catch such an error.



**Tip** After an error is corrected, L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X can refuse to typeset your document. If your document is `document.tex`, look in the same folder for the *auxiliary file* `document.aux` that was created by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. Delete `document.aux` and **typeset twice**. See Section 2.2.

## 2.6 Your errors: Davey's Dos and Don'ts

Based on his many years of experience correcting L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X articles for the journal *Algebra Universalis*, Brian Davey collected the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X mistakes most often made by authors. Here are some items from his list, divided into three categories.

### Commands

1. Place ALL custom commands and environments in the preamble!  
If you have trouble with custom commands, then you know where to find them.
2. Don't use `\def`; rather use `\newcommand` or `\renewcommand`.  
`\def` is a T<sub>E</sub>X command. It is like `\newcommand` (see Sections 1.9 and 14.1), but it can redefine an existing command. Redefining your own commands is bad enough, redefining a T<sub>E</sub>X command can be a disaster.
3. Do not simply type the name of an operator into a formula. Declare the appropriate operator; see Sections 1.9 and 14.1.  
For instance, do not type `$length I$`; it typesets as *lengthI*. It should be *length I*, typed as `$\length I$`. Of course, you have to add

```
\DeclareMathOperator{\length}{length}
```

to the preamble (see Section 1.8).

4. When you send a document to a coauthor or submit an article to a journal, remove all the custom commands not used.

This is a real time saver for your coauthor and editor.

### *Text*

1. Do not produce a list with horizontal and vertical spacing commands. Use a list environment; see Sections 3.8 and 4.2.
2. Do not type numbers for citations and internal references. Use `\cite{...}` for citations and `\ref{...}` for references. For references to equations, use `\eqref`; see Sections 1.7.1 and 5.3.
3. Do not number proclamations (see Section 4.4). Use the standard `amsart` environments for theorems, and so on, and let L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X number them.
4. When writing a document for a journal requiring a document class file, **do not**
  - (a) change any of the size parameters: for instance, do not use options like `12pt` to change the font size or the `\setlength` command to change any parameter of the page size;
  - (b) insert vertical white space via `\bigskip`, `\smallskip`, `\vskip`, `\vspace`, etc, nor via your own custom commands. Do not adjust horizontal space without a very good reason.

So if you want to display some text:



Please, display this text.



don't do this:

```
\medskip
\hspace*{6pt} Please, display this text.
\medskip
```

but rather

```
\begin{itemize}
\item[] Please, display this text.
\end{itemize}
```

or

```
\begin{quote}
Please, display this text.
\end{quote}
```

5. Do not leave a blank line before `\end{proof}` or before a text environment (see Section 4.1).
6. Do not use the `geometry` package.

### **Formulas**

1. Do not leave a blank line before a displayed formula.
2. Don't use the symbol `|` in a set description, use the binary relation `\mid`; see Section 5.5.4.  
For instance, `\{ x | x^2 < 2 \}` typesets as  $\{x|x^2 < 2\}$ . The correct form is  $\{x | x^2 < 2\}$ , typed as `$\{x \mid x^2 < 2\}$`.
3. Don't put punctuation marks inside an inline math environment.  
For instance, `sin x.` typed as `$\sin x.`; use `$\sin x$`. This typesets as  $\sin x$ . Notice the smaller space between “ $\sin x$ .” and “typed” and the wider space between “`$\sin x$.`” and “This”; see Sections 1.3 and 3.2.2.
4. Don't use two or more displayed formulas one after another. Use an appropriate environment such as `\align`, `\alignat`, `\gather`, and so on (see Section 7.1.1).
5. Don't use `\left\{`, `\right\}`, `\left(`, `\right)`, and so on, by default (see page 15 and Section 5.5.1 for the commands `\left` and `\right`). Even when `\left` and `\right` do not change the size of the symbol, they add extra space after the closing delimiter.
6. Use `\colon` for functions. For instance, `$f(x) \colon x \rightarrow x^2$` typesets as  $f(x) : x \rightarrow x^2$ . If you type `$f(x) : x \rightarrow x^2$`, you get  $f(x) : x \rightarrow x^2$ ; the spacing is bad.
7. Use `\[` and `\]` (or `equation*`) to type a displayed math environment (see Section 1.7) rather than the old `TEX` `$$` matched by `$$`. While display math produced via the latter does work properly most of the time, there are some `LATEX` commands that do not; for example, `\qedhere`.
8. Do not use the `center` environment to display formulas.
9. Use `\dots` first and let `LATEX` make the decision whether to use `\dots` or `\cdots`; see page 16 and Section 5.4.3. If `LATEX` gets it wrong, then use `\cdots` or `\ldots`.
10. If you can, avoid constructs (for instance,  $\overset{\text{up}}{\rightarrow}$ ) in inline formulas that disrupt the regular line spacing. Although `LATEX` automatically leaves room for it, it does not look good, as a rule.



---

# *Index*

*Italic* numbers indicate figures or tables, **bold** numbers indicate definitions.

- \ (backslash), 149, 508
  - key, 7, 60
  - starts commands, 6, 10, **52**
  - text symbol, 60, 64, 499
- \_ (space), 9, 47, **48**
  - and \verb\* command, 132
  - in arguments of commands, 69
  - in \bibitem labels, 256
  - in \cite commands, 256
  - in command names, 52
  - in tabular environments, 119
  - text symbol, 509
- \\_ (space com.), 9, **50**, 54, 86, 174, **510**
- ! (exclamation mark), 7, 46
  - float control, **251**, 488
  - in \index commands, 459, 460, 463
- ¡ (exclamation mark, Spanish), 64, **505**, 508
- \! (negthinspace), 166, **174**, 174, 503, 510
- \^ (‘ dieresis/umlaut text accent), 7, 11, 63, 506, 536
- ” (double quote), 7, **59**
  - in BIBTEX database fields, 451, 452
  - in \index commands, 463
  - key, 7, 47, 59
- ”ck (European character), 536
- ”s (eszett), 536
- #
  - in custom commands, 375, 383
  - key, 7, 47
- \# (# octothorp), 61, 64, 508
- \$
  - as inline math delimiter, 12, 13, 55, 58, **136**
  - act as braces, 136
- must be balanced, 137
- in error messages, 37, 38, 131, 137, 138, 140, 221
- key, 7, 47
- \\$ (\$) dollar sign), 7, 61, 64, 508
- \$\$
  - in error messages, 37
- TEX displayed math delimiter, 41, 136
- %
  - as comment character, 8, 45, **68–70**, 125, 282, 464
  - in BIBTEX databases, 70, 449
  - key, 7, 47
- \% (%) percent), 7, 45, 61, 64, 70, 508
  - in e-mail addresses, 268
- &
  - as alignment point, 21, 22, 204, 205, 207, 208
  - as column separator, 17, 119, 207, 208, 220, 224
  - key, 7, 47
- \& (& ampersand), 61, 64, 508
- ’ (right single quote), 7, 9, 46, **59**, 509
  - for primes (‘), 15, 142, 182
- \` (‘ acute text accent), 63, 506
- \( (start inline math mode), 13, 58
  - acts as special brace, 136, 137
  - must be balanced, 137
- (
  - as math delimiter ((), 149, 499
  - in index entries, 460
  - key, 7, 46

- \) (end inline math mode), 13, 58
  - acts as special brace, 136, 137
  - must be balanced, 137
- ) as math delimiter (), 149, 499
  - in index entries, 460
  - key, 7, 46
  - \* (\* asterisk), 60
    - interactive prompt, 97, 381–383, 521
    - key, 7, 47
  - \*\* prompt, 521
  - \*-form
    - of commands, 53, 82, 85, 87, 89, 113, 114, 132, 182, 183, 231, 241, 310, 377, 380, 387, 389, 445, 473, 475
    - of environments, 140, 189, 199, 201, 203, 219, 249
  - + key, 7, 47
  - + (plus), 14, 47, 141, 172, 175, 176, 201, 204, 205
    - as binary operation, 496
  - + and – rule, 172, 175, 176, 205
    - and subformulas, 204
    - in multiline environments, 201
  - \, (thinspace), 16, 51, 59, 174, 174, 503, 510
  - , (comma), 7, 46
    - and italic correction, 76
    - in \bibitem commands, 256
    - in BIBTeX databases, 430, 431, 450
    - use in formulas, 139
  - (dash, hyphen, minus), 7, 14, 47, 59, 141, 172, 175, 176, 183, 204, 205
    - as binary operation, 496
    - in \hyphenation commands, 66
  - \- (opt. hyphen), 12, 66, 66, 80
  - (– number ranges, en dash), 11, 59, 64, 508
    - in BIBTeX databases, 433
  - (— em dash), 11, 59, 64, 508
  - > Ti<sub>k</sub>Z rightarrow com., 361–363
  - . (period), 7, 46
    - and italic correction, 76
    - in BIBTeX databases, 432
  - \. overdot text accent (‘), 63, 506
  - \/ (italic correction), 76–77, 510
    - and font commands, 77
  - / (slash)
    - as divisor, 14, 47, 141
    - as math delimiter (/), 149, 499
    - key, 7
  - \: (medspace spacing com.), 174, 503, 510
  - \: (colon), 7, 46
    - as binary relation, 41, 47, 175, 493
  - \; (thickspace), 174, 503, 510
    - ; (semicolon), 7, 46
  - < (less than)
    - as binary relation (<), 493
    - key, 12, 47
    - text symbol, 64, 508
  - <- Ti<sub>k</sub>Z leftarrow com., 361–363
  - \=
    - macron text accent (‘), 63, 506
    - tab set command, 125
  - = (equal sign)
    - as binary relation (=), 493
    - in BIBTeX database fields, 430
    - key, 7, 47
  - \> (tabbing com.), 125, 126
  - > (greater than)
    - as binary relation (>), 493
    - key, 12, 47
    - text symbol, 64, 508
  - ?
    - prompt, 521
    - question mark, 7, 46
  - \? (Spanish question mark), 64, 505, 508
  - @ (@ at sign), 7, 47, 61
    - in BIBTeX database (bib) files, 430
    - in \index commands, 461, 462
  - @-expression, 119
  - \@. (blank math symbol for comm. diagrams), 229
  - \@. (intersentence space), 50, 510
  - \@< (stretchable left arrow math sym.), 228
  - \@= (stretchable equals sign math sym.), 229
  - \@> (stretchable right arrow math sym.), 228
  - \@AA (stretchable up arrow math sym.), 229
  - \@VV (stretchable down arrow math sym.), 229
  - \@vert (stretchable double vertical line), 229
  - \[ (start displayed math mode), 13, 19, 41, 136, 139
    - acts as special brace, 136, 140
  - \[
    - and optional arguments, 18, 53, 54, 112, 116, 119
    - key, 7, 46
    - math delimiter ([), 149, 499
    - with \item commands, 106
    - with \newcommand, 374
  - \] (end displayed math mode), 13, 19, 41, 136, 139
    - acts as special brace, 136, 140
  - \[
    - and optional arguments, 18, 53, 54, 112, 116, 119
    - key, 7, 46
    - math delimiter (]), 149, 499
    - with \item commands, 106
    - with \newcommand, 374

- {
  - for required arguments, 6, 10, 13, **53**, 54, 142, 370, 517
  - for scoping, 55–57
  - in BIBTEX entries, 430, 433
  - key, 7, 47
  - must be balanced, 36, 38, 56, 61
    - in \index commands, 468
  - with \def, 383
- \{
  - as math delimiter ({ }), 41, **149**, 499
  - text brace ({ }), 61, 64, 508
- }
  - for required arguments, 6, 10, 13, **53**, 54, 142, 370, 517
  - for scoping, 55–57
  - in BIBTEX entries, 430, 433
  - key, 7, 47
  - must be balanced, 36, 38, 56, 61
    - in \index commands, 468
  - with \def, 383
- \}
  - as math delimiter ( ), 41, **149**, 499
  - text brace ( ), 61, 64, 508
- ^ (caret)
  - for superscripts, **15**, 16, **142–143**, 144, 165
  - key, 7, 47, 61
- \^ (circumflex text accent (^))
  - 63**, 64, 506, 508
- \\_ ( underscore)
  - 7**, 61, 64, 508
  - in e-mail addresses, 267
- \_ (underscore)
  - for subscripts, **15**, 16, **142–143**, 144, 159, 165
  - key, 7, 47
- ` (left single quote), 7, 9, 46, **59**, 509
- \` (grave text accent), 46, **63**, 506
- \| ( || math delimiter), 148, **149**, 150, 169, 499
- | ( | vertical line), 7, 12, 47, 60, 150, 173
  - as binary relation, 172, 173
  - as math delimiter, 41, **149**, 152, 173, 175, 499
- in \index commands, 460, 463
- in tabular environments, 119
- \~ (tilde)
  - key, 7, 9, 47
  - tie/unbreakable space, **9**, 47, 50, 59, **60**, 83, 510
    - absorbs spaces, 60
    - in BIBTEX databases, 433
    - with cross-references, 246
  - \~ (\~ tilde text accent), 61, 63, 506, 509
- 9pt (doc. class option), **285**
- 10pt (doc. class option), **88**, **285**, **294**
- 11pt (doc. class option), **285**, **294**
- 12pt (doc. class option), **77**, **285**, **294**
- \\\ (new line), **81**, **83**
  - and \kill commands, 126
  - breaking lines with, 17, 21, 22, 24, 82, 108, 119, 125, 126, 129, 157, 199, 200, 203, 204, 215, 219, 231, 263–267, 285, 292, 297, 345
  - in arguments of commands, **83**
  - in environments, **83**, 108, 129
  - in text, 83
  - optional argument of, **81**, 82, **83**, 231
- \\\\* (new line), **82**, 231
- a4paper (doc. class opt.), 286, 294
- a5paper (doc. class opt.), 294
- \AA (Å), **64**, 505
- \aa (å), **64**, 505
- abbreviations
  - in bibliographic entries, 442
  - defining, 442
  - periods in, 49–51
  - using small caps for, 75, 482
  - using ties (^) with, 50
- above (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 357
- Abrams, Paul W., 555, 557
- absolute
  - names for equations, 20
  - referencing, 20, 103, 190, **246–247**
  - units, 11, 73, 77, 79, 80, 90, 92, 95, 296, 411
- abstract (text env.), **25**, **52**, **239**, 274
  - in beamer document class, 314
  - in report document class, 291
  - placement of, 239, 274
- abstract (bibl. com.), 431
- \abstractname (redef. name), 380
- abstracts, **25**, **239**, 314
  - in AMS document classes, 274
  - in report document class, 291
  - separate page for, 237, 287
- accents
  - European, 11, **63**, 63, 509
  - hyphenation of words with, 66
  - in bibliographies, 433
  - in hyperref titles, 309
  - math, **16**, **157–158**, 167, 168, 289, 382, 485
    - double, **157**
    - text, 7, 11, 53, **63**, 63, 506, 509
- accents (pack.), 158
- acronyms, using small caps for, 75, 482
- \acute (acute text accent), **63**, 506
- \acute (acute math accent), **158**, 502
- \addcontentsline (table of contents com.)
  - and lists of figures and tables, 478
  - arguments of, 475, 478

- adding lines  
     to lists of figures and tables, 478  
     to tables of contents, 475–476, 489
- addition, 14, 47, 141
- \address (top matter com.), 284, 314  
     in letters, 297  
     optional arguments of, 266, 267  
     rules for using, 266–267  
     with multiple authors, 270
- address (BIBTEX database field), 430, 431
- addresses  
     in letters, 297  
     of authors in articles, 266, 270, 284
- \addtocontents (table of contents com.)  
     and lists of figures and tables, 478  
     arguments of, 476, 478
- \addtocounter (counter incr. com.), 409
- \addtolength (counter setting com.), 412
- adjusted  
     columns, 198, 220–230  
     formulas, 198, 220–230  
         flush left and right, 202
- adjusting  
     interline spacing, 79, 82–83  
     placement of root with \sqrt, 145
- Adobe  
     Acrobat Professional, 306, 309, 313, 485  
     placing hyperlinks in documents, 307  
     Illustrator, 27, 349, 364  
     PostScript (ps), *see* PS  
     Reader, 27, 309, 313, 346, 488
- Adobe Systems, 305–307, 557
- \AE Aesc (Æ), 64, 505  
 \æ aesc (æ), 64, 505
- \afterpage (delay com.), 300
- afterpage (pack.), 300
- afterwords, of books, 473
- \aleph (א Hebrew char.), 147, 491
- \alert (beamer text style com.), 325
- align (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 357
- align (math align. env.), 21–23, 41, 196, 197, 198, 207–211, 218, 219, 485, 514  
     annotated, 197  
     page breaks in, 230
- align\* (math align. env.), 22, 209, 214
- alignat (math align. env.), 41, 196, 198, 211–213  
     argument of, 213
- aligned  
     formulas, 21–23, 195–198, 207–213, 218, 220, 230, 286, 514  
     text in, 213–215
- math environments, 230  
     align, 21–23, 41, 196, 198, 207–211, 218, 219, 230
- alignat, 41, 196, 198, 211–213  
     and \verb commands, 132  
     eqnarray, 209–210  
     flalign, 196, 198, 209, 219  
     inserting lines of text in, 213  
     intercolumn space in, 195  
     subsidiary math environments, 215–220  
         aligned, 198, 215–217  
         alignedat, 215–217, 227  
         split, 196, 198, 217–220, 286
- aligned (subsidi. math align. env.), 198, 215–217  
     and \allowdisplaybreaks commands, 231
- alignedat (subsidi. math align. env.), 215–217, 227  
     and \allowdisplaybreaks commands, 231
- alignment  
     of columns in tabular environments, 119, 120, 301  
     of formulas, *see also under* adjusted, 207–220  
         annotated, 24, 197  
         commands for, 202  
         flush left and right, 195  
         multiline, 21–24, 205, 207  
         simple, 21, 21–23
- of large symbols, 217
- of text, 51, 90, 108, 118, 215, 414  
     centering, 6, 10, 41, 108, 108, 118, 120, 215, 315, 422  
     command declarations for, 108, 120  
     flush left, 10, 108  
     flush right, 10, 90, 108  
     with trivlist environments, 422
- of text boxes, vertical, 95, 96
- point for subformulas (&), 21, 22, 24, 204, 205, 208  
     within text boxes, 92, 95
- allowdisplaybreaks (display break com.), 230  
     and subsidiary math environments, 231  
     optional argument of, 231
- alltt (disp. text env.), 143, 299  
 alltt (pack.), 131, 299, 520
- \Alpha (uppercase letter counter style com.), 408
- \alpha (lowercase letter counter style com.), 408
- \alpha (α Greek char.), 147, 492
- alpha (BIBTEX style), 434
- alphabets (counter styles), 408
- alphabets, math, 183, 182–183  
     blackboard bold, 165, 184, 396, 502  
     calligraphic, 169, 184, 289, 396, 502  
     Euler Fraktur, 164, 166, 184, 289, 396, 502  
     Euler Script, 289, 290, 396, 502  
     Greek, 184  
     symbol, 184–186

- alphanumeric keys, 7  
`\amalg` ( $\sqcup$  math op.), 496  
ampersand (&)  
    as alignment point  
    for annotations, 23, 24  
    for subformulas, 21, 22, 204, 205, 208  
    as column separator, 17, 119, 207, 208  
    text symbol, 61, 64, 508  
AMS (American Mathematical Society), xxvii,  
    515, 531  
AMSFONTS, *see* AMSFONTS  
article templates, 282–285  
bibliographies  
    database files, 443  
    fields, 431  
    sample files, 443, 443–444  
    styles, 256, 427, 427, 432, 443–444  
distribution, 261, 288–290, 385, 442, 443,  
    511  
document classes, *see* document classes  
environments, *see* displayed math environments,  
    subsidiary math environments,  
    *and* text environments  
subject classifications, 269  
technical support provided by, 529  
top matter  
    AMS specific information, 269–270  
    article information, 263–265  
    author information, 265–269  
    commands, 263–274, 284  
    examples of, 271–274  
    rules for, 265–269  
    with multiple authors, 270–271  
Web site, 269, 529  
`\AmS` ( $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$  logo com.), 63  
AMS package distribution, 261, 288–290, 313,  
    385, 424, 442, 443, 511  
 $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ - $\text{\LaTeX}$ , 513, 514  
    history of, 511–515  
    version 1.0, 514  
    version 1.1, 514  
        two-letter font commands, 79  
    version 1.2, 514  
    version 2.0, 514  
AMS- $\text{\TeX}$ , 512, 514  
    history of, 511–515  
`amsalpha` (BIB $\text{\TeX}$  style), 434  
`amsart` (doc. class), 31, 40, 65, 108, 137, 177,  
    237–239, 242, 261–290, 471, 474, 516,  
    522  
    anatomy of, 24  
    and numbered lists, 102  
    front matter of, 274  
sample article, 108, 113, 115, 218, 257, 263,  
    274–278, 282, 376, 382, 388, 400–449,  
    522  
    top matter of, 239  
`amsart.tpl` (sample file), 282  
`amsbook` (doc. class), xxx, 31, 241, 381, 471,  
    472–474, 516  
    for exercises, 478  
`amsbsy` (pack.), 289, 290  
`amscd` (pack.), 228–230, 289  
AMSFONTS, 288, 289–290  
    document class options for, 288  
PostScript versions of, 288, 289, 514, 515,  
    520  
technical support for, 529  
updates to, 520  
`amsfonts` (pack.), 289–290  
    options, 289  
`amsgen` (pack.), 289, 290  
`amslatex` ( $\text{\TeX}$  distr. directory), 299, 300, 528  
`amsmath` (pack.), 32, 220, 288, 289, 290, 411,  
    514, 520  
    document class options affecting, 286–287  
    options, 287  
`amsmath.sty` (AMS distr. file), 392  
`amsidx` (pack.), 290  
`\AMShname` (hyperref redef. name), 311  
`amsopn` (pack.), 289, 290  
`amsplain` (BIB $\text{\TeX}$  style), 427, 443, 445  
`amsplain bst` (BIB $\text{\TeX}$  style file), 427, 427, 432,  
    443, 445, 452  
`amsproc` (doc. class), 263, 381, 516  
`amsproc template` (AMS sample template file),  
    285  
`amsrefs`, 452  
    creating typeset bibliography, 453  
`amssymb` (pack.), 164, 282, 288, 289, 379  
`amstext` (pack.), 289, 290  
`amsthm` (pack.), 32, 290  
`amsxtra` (pack.), 157, 158, 288, 289  
`\And` (& math op.), 496  
`\and`, top matter command, 292, 294  
`\and`, in bibliographies, 432  
`\angle` ( $\angle$  math sym.), 498  
annotations  
    alignment of, 23, 24  
    of formulas, 212  
`apalike` (pack.), 443  
apostrophe ('), 9, 46  
    key, 15, 182  
appendices, 243, 473  
    numbering of, 243, 473  
`\appendix` (struct. com.), 243, 473

- \appendixname (redef. name), 381
  - and hyperref package, 311
- \approx ( $\approx$  binary rel.), 493
- \approxeq ( $\approxeq$  binary rel.), 494
- \arabic (numeric counter style com.), 408, 408, 418
- \arc (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 355
- \arccos (arccos math op.), 153, 500
- \arcsin (arcsin math op.), 153, 500
- \arctan (arctan math op.), 153, 500
- \arg (arg math op.), 153, 500
- arguments
  - and tokens, 516
  - empty ({ }), 54, 142, 160, 172, 173, 181, 191, 269, 297
  - long, 57
  - movable, 58, 477
  - negative, 87, 145
  - of commands, *see also under* specific commands, *see also under* specific commands, 315, 322, 336, 339, 342
  - of commutative diagram symbols, 229
  - of custom commands, 374–377
    - multiple, 374, 376
    - optional, 378
    - short, 377–378
  - of custom environments
    - optional, 385, 387, 389
    - short, 389
  - of environments, *see also under* specific environments
  - of top matter commands, *see also* top matter, 262, 263, 269–271, 274
  - optional, 55, 83, 85, 97–99, 109, 145, 146, 160, 222, 231, 238
    - multiple, 53, 54
    - of commands, 104, 106, 107, 111, 187, 188, 256, 266–269, 335, 407, 409, 416, 417, 422, 478
    - of environments, 53, 109, 112, 116, 119, 217, 231, 250, 251, 389, 488
    - of sectioning commands, 241, 475
    - of structural commands, 243, 472
    - of TikZ commands, 350
    - of top matter commands, 263–271
  - use square brackets ([ ]), 18, 53–54, 107, 116, 119, 274
  - required, 95, 97, 160, 181, 262, 263, 522
    - multiple, 13, 53, 121, 178, 180, 181, 260, 299, 384, 412, 413
    - of commands, 13, 53, 121, 178, 180, 181, 245, 260, 269, 412, 475, 480, 506
    - of environments, 53, 119, 211, 213, 224, 226, 253–254, 256, 297, 388–390, 478
    - use braces ({ }), 6, 10, 13, 53, 54, 517
- short, 57
- single character, 53
- spacing within, 13, 69, 92, 138, 146, 164, 178, 180, 467
- specifying zero in, 98
- arithmetic
  - operations, 14–15, 141–143
  - with counters, 301, 409–410
  - with length commands, 301, 412
- around (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 359
- array (subsid. math env.), 196, 198, 217, 220, 224–227, 227, 300, 513
  - arguments of, 225, 226
- array (pack.), 300
- arrays, 16–17, 224–227
- \arraystretch (table com.), 123
  - adjusting vertical spacing with, 123
- arrow (TikZ tikz-cd pack. com.), 361–363
- arrows, math, 160, 171, 228, 497
  - as delimiters, 149, 150, 499
- ARTICLE (bibl. entry type), 430, 434
- article (doc. class), 26, 31, 177, 237, 239, 262, 290, 291, 291–296, 381, 516
  - bibliographies in, 253, 255
  - sectioning commands provided by, 242
- articles
  - bibliographies in, 251–257, 429, 442, 443–444, 452
  - creating templates for, 282–285
  - in BIBTEX database files, 434–435, 442
  - sectioning of, 240–243
  - top matter information
    - AMS specific, 263–274
    - AMS subject classifications, 269
    - author addresses, 266, 270, 284
    - author names, 265, 284
    - contributor, 266
    - current addresses, 267, 271
    - dedications, 265
    - e-mail addresses, 267, 270, 284
    - Internet addresses, 268, 270, 284
    - keywords, 270, 285
    - research support, 268, 270, 284, 292
    - title, 263, 285
  - \ast (\* math op.), 496
  - asterisk (\* text symbol), 64, 508
  - \asymp ( $\asymp$  binary rel.), 493
  - at sign (@)
    - in BIBTEX database (bib) files, 430
    - in \index commands, 461, 462
  - \author (top matter com.), 237, 292, 294, 319, 474
    - multiple authors in, 292
    - optional arguments of, 265, 319
  - author (BIBTEX database field), 430

- authors
  - information about
    - in AMS top matter, 265–270
  - multiple
    - in AMS documents, 270
    - in bibliographies, 432
    - in documents, 292
  - names of
    - in articles, 265, 284
    - in running heads, 265
- AutomaTeX
  - $\text{\LaTeX}$  app for iPad, 544
- automatic
  - numbering, 19, 21, 34, 103, 109, 219, 240
  - renumbering, 19, 34, 522
- `\autoref` (`hyperref` cross-ref. com.), 308, 308, 310
  - names supported by, 311
- `aux` (aux. files), 34, 34, 446, 477, 488
  - symbolic references recorded in, 518
- auxiliary files, 34, 478, 488, *see also aux, bbl*
  - `bib`, `blg`, `bst`, `glo`, `idx`, `ilg`, `ind`
  - `lof`, `log`, `lot`, `out`, *and toc*, 518
  - names of, 518
  - polishing, 488–489
- `\b` (\_ underscore text accent), 63, 506
- `b5paper` (doc. class opt.), 294
- `babel` ( $\text{\LaTeX}$  distr. directory), 299
- `babel` (pack.), 300, 535–536
  - options, 536
- `babybeamer1.pdf` (sample file), 321–323
- `babybeamer2.tex` (sample file), 321
- `babybeamer3.tex` (sample file), 326
- `babybeamer4.tex` (sample file), 331
- `babybeamer5.tex` (sample file), 327
- `babybeamer6.tex` (sample file), 330, 331
- `babybeamer6block.tex` (sample file), 331
- `babybeamer7.tex` (sample file), 331–335
- `babybeamer8.tex` (sample file), 335
- `babybeamer9.tex` (sample file), 337
- `babybeamer10.tex` (sample file), 346
- back matter, 237, 251–258, 473
  - bibliographies in, 237
  - index in, 456
    - numbering of chapters in, 473
- `\backepsilon` ( $\ni$  binary rel.), 494
- `\backmatter` (struct. com.), 473
- `\backprime` ( $\prime$  math sym.), 498
- `backref` (pack.), 308, 309
- `backref` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 308, 309
  - `\backsim` ( $\sim$  binary rel.), 494
  - `\backsimeq` ( $\simeq$  binary rel.), 494
  - `\backslash` ( $\backslash$  math delimiter), 149, 499
  - `\backslash` ( $\backslash$  text symbol), 64, 508
- badness, 517
- balancing
  - braces, 56, 61
    - errors with, 56–57
    - in `\index` commands, 468
  - inline math delimiters, 137
  - math delimiters, 150, 204
- `\bar` ( $\bar{x}$  math accent), 16, 158, 158, 168, 502
- bar, vertical ( $\backslash$  text symbol), 64, 508
- `\barwedge` ( $\barwedge$  math sym.), 496
- `base` ( $\text{\LaTeX}$  distr. directory), 298, 299
  - packages in, 298
- base names (of files), 518
- baseline, of text, 79, 93
  - adjusting with `setspace`, 83
- `\baselineskip` (length com.), 79, 85
- `\baselinestretch` (length com.), 83
- `\Bbbk` ( $\mathbb{K}$  math sym.), 498
- `bbl` (proc. bibl. files), 452, 453
- `beamer` (doc. class), *see also under presentations*, 313–347
  - abstracts in, 314
  - color in, 336
  - commands
    - `\beamergotobutton`, 332
    - `\breakhere`, 339
    - `\color`, 327, 336
    - `\colorbox`, 336
    - `\fcolorbox`, 336
    - `\frametitle`, 28–30, 315, 316, 332
    - `\hyperlink`, 331
    - `\institute`, 314
    - `\note`, 342
    - `\only`, 321–323, 325–327, 331
    - `\onslide`, 321, 323, 325–327, 330, 331
    - `\pause`, 30, 87, 321, 321, 325
    - `\setbeamercolor`, 338
    - `\setbeamertemplate`, 342
    - `\tableofcontents`, 316
    - `\textcolor`, 336
    - `\usecolorortheme`, 344
    - `\usefonttheme`, 345
    - `\usetheme`, 27, 316, 344
  - documentation for, 313, 346
  - installation of, 314
  - options
    - `handout`, 346
    - `notes=only`, 343
    - `notes=show`, 342
    - `trans`, 343, 346
    - `xcolor=dvipsnam`, 337
  - preamble in, 27, 314–315
  - sections in, 316
  - sidebars, 316
  - sidebars in, 316

- table of contents in, 316  
 themes, 27, 316, **343–345**  
     top matter in, 27, 314–315  
`\beamergotobutton` (`beamer` com.), 332  
`beamerstructure.tex` (sample file), 339, 341  
`\because` (: binary rel.), 494  
`\begin` (start of env.), 51, **52**, 55, 56  
`below` (`TikZ` graphics pack. com.), 354, **357**  
`Berkeley` (`beamer` theme), 316, 319, 320, 344  
 Berry, Karl, 532, 555, 557  
     font-naming scheme, 532  
`\beta` ( $\beta$  Greek char.), *147, 492*  
`\beth` ( $\beth$  Hebrew char.), *147, 491*  
`\between` ( $\between$  binary rel.), *494*  
 Bezos, Javier, 158, 513  
`\bf` (obs. `LATEX` 2.09 font com.), *79*  
`\bfseries` (font weight com. dec.), **55**, 57, 74, *77, 78, 79, 107, 506*  
`\bfseries` (font weight env.), *107*  
`\bib` (`BIBTEX` database files), *427, 429–442, 445*  
     accents in, *433*  
     AMS, *442, 443–444*  
     commas (,) in, *430, 431, 450*  
     comments in, *449*  
     cross-referencing within, *438–439*  
     delimited with parentheses (( )), *430*  
     delimiters in, *430*  
     double quote ("") in, *451, 452*  
     en dashes (–) in, *433*  
     entries  
         abbreviations in, *442*  
         capitalization in, *433*  
         Jr. in, *432*  
         multiple authors in, *432*  
         von in, *432*  
     entry types, *429–442*  
         case-sensitivity of, *431*  
         start with @, *430*  
     equals signs (=) in, *430*  
     fields in, *431, 437–440, 442*  
         adding your own, *431*  
         case-sensitivity of, *431*  
         optional, *431, 434–442*  
         required, *431, 434–442*  
         rules for typing, *432–442*  
         termination of, *451*  
         used by AMS bibliography styles, *431*  
     location of, *445*  
     number ranges in, *433*  
     numbers in, *430*  
     periods (.) in, *432*  
     portability of, *432*  
     samples of, *429, 443, 452*  
     ties (unbreakable spaces) in, *433*  
`\bincite` (aux. file com.), *518*
- `\BibDesk` bibl. manager, *452, 453*  
`\bibitem` (bibl. com.), *20, 254*  
     commas in, *256*  
     labels for, *253*  
     optional argument of, *256*  
     spaces in, *256*  
`\biblatex` (pack.), *453*  
 bibliographies, *25, 251–257*  
     AMS support for, *442, 443–444*  
     appear in back matter, *237*  
     citing references from, *20, 256, 444*  
         as hyperlinks in PDF files, *308*  
         with `BIBTEX`, *444*  
     commands for, *442, 445*  
     defining, *50, 251–257, 379, 414, 429–442*  
     document class options affecting, *296, 296*  
     entries made in auxiliary files for, *518*  
     examples of, *251–253, 427–429*  
     in articles, *429, 442, 452*  
     multiple, in a document, *257*  
     numbering of, **254**  
     portability of, *432, 434*  
     sample files for, *429, 443, 443–444, 452*  
     styles, *427, 428, 443*  
         AMS, **256**, *427, 432, 443, 445*  
     templates, *251*  
     with `amsrefs`, *453*  
`\bibliography` (bibl. com.), *53, 443, 445*  
 bibliography managers  
     `BibDesk`, *452, 453*  
     `BibTexMng`, *452, 453*  
     `Ebib`, *452*  
     `JBibtexManager`, *452*  
     `pybibliographer`, *452*  
`\bibliographystyle` (bibl. com.), *443, 445*  
`\bibname` (redef. name), *257, 381*  
`BIBTEX`, *309, 427–453*  
     AMS support for, *442*  
     citing references with, *444*  
     commands, **442, 445**  
     log files, *see b1g*  
     running, *443–452*  
     sample files for, *429, 443, 443–444*  
     style files, *see bst*  
     styles, *427, 428, 432, 443, 445*  
`BIBTEX 1.0` (Patashnik), *560*  
`BIBTEXing` (Patashnik), *452*  
`BibTexMng` bibl. manager, *452, 453*  
`\Big` (math delim. size com.), *150*  
`\big` (math delim. size com.), *150*  
`\bigcap` ( $\bigcap$  large math op.), *156, 501*  
`\bigcirc` ( $\bigcirc$  large math op.), *496*  
`\bigcup` ( $\bigcup$  large math op.), *156, 501*  
`\Bigg` (math delim. size com.), *150*  
`\bigg` (math delim. size com.), *150*

- \Biggl (math delim. size com.), 151
- \biggl (math delim. size com.), 151, 168
- \biggm (math delim., as binary rel. size com.), 152
- \Biggr (math delim. size com.), 151
- \biggr (math delim. size com.), 151, 168
- \Bigl (math delim. size com.), 151
- \bigl (math delim. size com.), 151
- \bigm (math delim., as binary rel. size com.), 152
- \bigdot ( $\odot$  large math op.), 156, 501
- \bigoplus ( $\oplus$  large math op.), 156, 501
- \bigotimes ( $\otimes$  large math op.), 156, 501
- \Bigr (math delim. size com.), 151
- \bigr (math delim. size com.), 151
- \bigskip (spacing com.), 40, 88
- \bigsqcup ( $\sqcup$  large math op.), 156, 501
- \bigstar ( $\star$  math sym.), 498
- \bigtriangledown ( $\nabla$  math op.), 496
- \bigtriangleup ( $\Delta$  math op.), 496
- \biguplus ( $\uplus$  large math op.), 156, 501
- \bigvee ( $\vee$  large math op.), 156, 501
- \bigwedge ( $\wedge$  large math op.), 156, 501
- binary operations, 172, 182, 496
  - + and – rule, 175, 201, 204
  - adding white space around, 139
  - and alignment of displayed formulas, 205
  - and breaking displayed formulas, 201, 204, 205
- created with \overset, 180
- created with \underset, 166
- defining, 182
  - and subformulas, 204
- for congruences, 154
- binary relations, 41, 152, 165, 172, 173, 175, 493, 494
  - adding white space around, 139
  - and alignment of displayed formulas, 205
  - and breaking displayed formulas, 205
  - created with \overset, 166, 180
  - defining, 182
  - delimiters as, 152
  - math delimiters as, 152
  - negated, 165, 181, 495
- \binom (math com.), 15, 143
- binomial coefficients, 15, 143
  - in inline and displayed math environments, 143
- bitmap fonts, 531
- Black, Alison, 555, 557
- blackboard bold (math alphabet), 165, 184, 396
  - \blacklozenge ( $\blacklozenge$  math sym.), 498
  - \blacksquare ( $\blacksquare$  math sym.), 498
  - \blacktriangle ( $\blacktriangle$  math sym.), 498
  - \blacktriangledown ( $\blacktriangledown$  math sym.), 498
- \blacktriangleleft ( $\blacktriangleleft$  binary rel.), 494
- \blacktriangleright ( $\blacktriangleright$  binary rel.), 494
- blank
  - lines
    - in bibliographies, 309
    - in displayed math environments, 37, 137, 140, 203
    - in inline math environments, 137
    - in text environments, 41, 102
    - in top matter commands, 263
    - in verbatim environments, 130
    - terminating paragraphs with, 9, 41, 48, 83, 102, 128, 309
  - math delimiters, 150, 166
  - math symbol for commutative diagrams ( $\circ$ ), 229
- \blg (BIBTeX log files), 448
- \block (beamer env.), 330–331
- Blue Sky Research, 515, 531
- blue spaces, *see also tie, unbreakable spaces, non-breakable spaces*, 60
- \bm (pack.), 300
- \Bmatrix (subsid. math env.), 223
- \bmatrix (subsid. math env.), 223
- \bmod (mod math op.), 154, 155, 496
- body
  - of books, 473
  - of documents, 8, 25, 52, 161, 236–258
  - of environments, 52
  - of page, 258
  - of presentations, 315
- bold
  - font weight, 10, 73, 74, 77, 78, 79, 107, 147, 168, 183, 183, 184, 289, 396, 506
  - math symbols, 185–186, 289, 300
- \boldsymbol (math font weight com.), 168, 184, 185, 289, 502
- \BOOK (bibl. entry type), 430, 435–436
- \book (doc. class), xxx, 31, 241, 381, 471, 472–474, 476, 514, 516
- \BOOKLET (bibl. entry type), 430, 441
- \bookmarks=true (opt. of hyperref pack.), 308
- bookmarks, in PDF documents, 309
- books
  - bodies of, 473
  - document classes for, 31, 241, 471, 472–474, 476, 478, 514, 516
    - options of, 474
  - final preparation of, 484–489
  - in BIBTeX database files, 435–436
  - logical design of, 481–483
  - numbering of structures in, 472
  - sectioning of, 472–473, 481
  - structure of, 473
  - top matter of, 239

- writing with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, 471–489
- `booktabs` (pack.), 124
- `booktitle` (BIB<sup>T</sup>E<sub>X</sub> database field), 431, 439
- `\bot` ( $\perp$  math sym.), 498
- bottoms, of text boxes, 413
- `\bowtie` ( $\bowtie$  binary rel.), 493
- `\Box` ( $\Box$  math sym.), 498
- `\boxdot` ( $\boxdot$  math op.), 496
- boxes, 91–99
  - and length commands, 413
  - around formulas, 193
  - commands for measuring, 413
  - invisible, *see* struts
  - multiline, 91
  - paragraph, 95–96
  - solid, 97–98, *see also* struts
  - text, 91–99
    - alignment of contents in, 92, 96
    - behave as single characters, 91
    - commands for, 13, 18, 66, 67, 83, 91, 91–99, 122, 124, 138, 146–147, 164, 165, 193, 229, 289
    - environments for, 91, 93, 96, 388, 389
    - fine tuning placement of, 99
    - framed, 93–94
    - measurements of, 413
    - single line, 91–93, 146
    - vertical alignment of, 96, 99
    - vertical alignment of, 95
- `\boxminus` ( $\boxminus$  math op.), 496
- `\boxplus` ( $\boxplus$  math op.), 496
- `\boxtimes` ( $\boxtimes$  math op.), 496
- Braams, Johannes, xxxi, 513, 535, 557, 560
- braces
  - must be balanced, 36, 56, 61, 71, 163, 468
  - special, 13, 55–57, 136, 137, 140
    - cannot overlap, 56–57
    - environments act as, 55
    - stretchable horizontal, 159–160
  - braces, curly ({}), 6, 10, 13, 15, 53–55, 142, 165, 172, 173, 191, 204, 205, 269, 274, 370, 384
    - and command declarations, 371
    - as math delimiters, 41, 149, 499
    - define scope, 55–57
    - in BIB<sup>T</sup>E<sub>X</sub> entries, 430, 432, 433, 442
    - in \index commands, 468
    - in text ({}), 61, 64, 508, 517
    - unbalanced, 36, 38, 61
    - with \def, 383
  - brackets, square ([ ]), 7, 46
    - as math delimiters, 15, 149, 499
    - breaking formula lines within, 205
    - enclose optional arguments, 18, 53–54, 107, 116, 119, 147, 319
- with \newcommand, 374
- `\breakhere` (beamer com.), 339
- breaking
  - formulas, *see under* formulas
  - lines, *see under* lines
  - paragraphs, *see under* paragraphs
- breve (‘ text accent), 63, 506
- `\breve` (‘̄ text accent), 158, 502
- Bringhurst, Robert, 51, 555, 557
- browsers, *see under* Internet
- `bst` (BIB<sup>T</sup>E<sub>X</sub> style files), 427, 427, 428, 432, 443, 445
  - determine use of fields, 431
  - form of citations created by, 434
  - location of, 445
- `\bullet` (• math op.), 496
- bullet (• text sym.), 64, 508
- bulleted lists, 103
- `\Bumpeq` ( $\approx$  binary rel.), 494
- `\bumpeq` ( $\simeq$  binary rel.), 494
- Butcher, Judith, 555, 557
- `\bysame` (bibl. com.), 256, 379
- `\c` (ç cedilla text accent), 63, 506
- `\circ` (copyright text sym.), 64, 508
- `\calc` (pack.), 301, 410, 413
- calligraphic (math alphabet), 169, 184, 289, 396, 502
- `\Cap` ( $\Cap$  math op.), 496
- `\cap` ( $\cap$  math op.), 496
- capitalization, in bibliographic databases, 256
- `\caption`, 37
  - in figures, 249
  - in tables, 27, 248
    - optional argument of, 478
  - captions, 118, 478
    - in figures, 249
    - in lists, 104, 478
    - in tables, 27, 248
      - multiple, 248
  - caret (^), 61
  - Carlisle, David, xxxi, 107, 120, 246, 249, 308, 372, 513, 560
  - caron (‘ text accent), 63, 506
  - case-sensitivity
    - of BIB<sup>T</sup>E<sub>X</sub> fields and entry types, 431
    - of command names, 53
    - of environment names, 53
    - of \label arguments, 245
    - of sort keys in \index commands, 468
  - `\cases` (subsidiary math env.), 23–24, 196, 198, 227–228
    - page breaks in, 230
  - `\ccname` (redef. name), 381
  - `\CD` (subsidiary math env.), 228–230

- \cdot (· math op.), 14, **141**, 496
- \cdots (centered ellipsis), 41, **144**, 170
- cedilla (ç text accent), 63, 506
- ceiling math delimiters, 149, 499
- center** (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 358
- center** (text align. env.), 6, 41, 90, **108**, 118, 215, 414
  - breaking lines in, 108
  - L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X definition of, 422
- \centerdot (· math op.), 496
- centered ellipses, **16**, 143
- \centering (alignment com. declaration), **108**, 215, 315
- centering text, 6, 10, 41, 108
  - in columns in **tabular** environments, 119
  - in presentations, 315
  - in tables, 118, 120
- centertags** (doc. class opt.), **286**
- centimeter (cm abs. unit), 90, 92, 95, 411
- \cfrac (math com.), **187**
- \chapter (struct. com.), 241, 243, 292, **472**
  - arguments of, 472
  - numbering of
    - equations in, 472
    - in front and back matter, 473
- chapter (counter), 406, 407
- chapter (BIB<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> database field), 431
- \chaptername (redef. name), **381**
  - and **hyperref** package, 311
- chapters
  - document class options to set start pages for, 474
  - grouping into parts, 472
  - in BIB<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> database files, 441
  - in books, 472
  - numbering of, in front and back matter, 473
- characters, *see also* glyphs
  - accented, 7, 11, 46, 53, **63**, 66, **157–158**, 167, 309, 423, 433
  - European, 11, **63**, **505–506**
  - following **verbatim** environments, 130
  - Greek, 147, 148, 165, 393–396, 492
  - Hebrew, 147, 491
  - invalid, 7, 47
  - math, 12, 47
  - special, 7, **47**, **60–62**
    - accessing with \symbol, 61, 299
    - in \index commands, 463
    - treating text boxes as, 91
- \check (Ӯ math accent), 158, 502
- checkers, spelling, 35
- Chen, Pehong, 455, 469, 557
- \chi (Ӯ Greek char.), 147, 492
- \circ (◦ math op.), 496
- \circeq (Ӱ binary rel.), 494
- \circle (TikZ graphics pack. com.), **351**, 351–355, 359
- \circlearrowleft (Ӹ math arrow), 497
- \circlearrowright (ӹ math arrow), 497
- \circledast (⊗ math op.), 496
- \circledcirc (◎ math op.), 496
- \circleddash (⊖ math op.), 496
- \circledS (Ⓢ math sym.), 498
- circumflex (^)
  - text accent, 63, 506
  - text symbol, 64, 508
- citations, bibliographic, 20, 40, 243, **254**, **445**
  - created by BIB<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> styles, 434, **444**
  - hyperlinks in PDF files, 308
  - showing in margins, 246
- \cite (bibliographic com.), 20, 40, 243, **254**
  - multiple citations, 256
  - optional argument of, 256
  - showing contents, in margin, 301
  - showing labels in margins, 246
  - spaces in, 256
  - with BIB<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub>, 444
- classes, document, *see* document classes
- classification of math symbols, **172–173**, 182
- \cleardoublepage (page breaking com.), 85
- cleardoublepage.sty** (sample file), 85
- \clearpage (page breaking com.), **85**, **86**, **251**
- clients
  - FTP, 526
- \cline (table com.), 121–122, **122**
- Cloud and iPad, 539, 548
- cls** (doc. class files), 238, 380, 418
- \clubsuit (♣ math sym.), 498
- CM (Computer Modern) fonts, *see* Computer Modern fonts
- cm (centimeter abs. unit), 90, 92, 95, 411
- cmr10.tfm** (T<sub>E</sub>X font metric file), 516
- code.tex** (sample file), 364
- coefficients, binomial, *see* binomial coefficients
- collections, in BIB<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> database files, 437–438
- \colon (: math com.), 41, 47, **175**
- colophons, of books, 473
- color
  - in presentations, 336–338
  - in TikZ graphics, 360
- \color (beamer com.), 327, 336
- \colorbox (beamer com.), 336
- colorlinks** (opt. of **hyperref** pack.), 308, 309
- column (beamer env.), 335
- columns
  - double
    - document class options for, 287, 295
    - figures spanning, 249
    - footnotes in, 301
    - tables spanning, 249

- in presentations, 335
- math
  - adjusted, 220–230
  - adjusting with `f1align` environment, 209
  - in aligned formulas, 207–220
  - specifying in `matrix` subsidiary environments, 221
  - multiple, 86, 301, 513
  - separator (&), 17, 119, 207, 208
  - width of, in `tabular` environments, 120
- `columns` (beamer env.), 335
- combining
  - document class options, 296
  - encapsulators in `\index` commands, 460
- command declarations, 57, 108, 120, 215
  - affecting multiple paragraphs, 75
  - do not take arguments, 57
  - for fonts, *see* font command declarations
  - scope of, 74, 371–372, 387
  - using in custom commands, 75, 371–372
- command files, *see also* `sty` files and packages, 238, 370, 390–400
  - commands in, 391
  - terminating, 399
- commands, 51–58, 177
  - \*-ed form, 53, 82, 85, 87, 89, 113, 114, 132, 182, 183, 231, 241, 310, 377, 380, 387, 389, 445, 473, 475
  - arguments of, *see under* arguments or specific commands, 315
  - as tokens, 516
  - custom, *see* custom commands
  - defining, *see* custom commands
  - delimited, *see* delimited commands
  - for boxes, *see under* boxes
  - for expanding values, 63–65, 70, 71, 97, 408
  - for filling horizontal space, 90–91, 98, 110, 169, 221, 224, 422
  - for fonts, *see* font commands
  - for graphics, *see under* graphics
  - for indexing, *see under* indexing
  - for presentations, *see under* presentations, `beamer`, *see under* presentations, `beamer` and `FoilTEX`
  - for tables, *see under* tables or floats
  - fragile, 58
    - protecting, 58, 240, 241, 472, 477
  - generalized, *see* custom commands
  - global, *see under* scope
  - in preamble, *see under* preamble
  - length, *see* length commands
  - local, *see under* scope
  - logical design using, 35
  - long, 57
  - names of, 52
- case-sensitivity of, 53
- primitive, *see* primitive commands
  - providing, 379
  - redefining, 378–379
  - scope of, *see under* scope
  - sectioning, *see* structural commands
  - short, 57, 74, 263, 274
    - defining, 377–378
  - spacing, *see* spacing commands
  - start with \, 6, 10, 52
- structural, *see* structural commands
  - terminating, 13, 52, 138
- `TEX`, *see under* `TEX`
- text style, *see* text style commands
  - to avoid using, 79, 483
  - types of, 57–58
- user-defined, *see* custom commands
- commas (,), 7, 46
  - and italic correction, 76
  - in `\bibitem` commands, 256
  - in `BIBTEX` databases, 430, 431, 450
  - use in formulas, 139
- `comment` (comment env.), 70–71, 301, 391, 513
  - locating errors with, 71
  - nesting, 70
- comments, 8, 68–71
  - block comment, 70, 480
  - creating with % characters, 69, 70, 125, 282
  - creating with `comment` environments, 70–71
  - finding errors using, 37, 70, 370, 391
  - in `BIBTEX` database files, 70, 449
  - inserted using `kill` command, 125
  - marginal, 96–97, 486
    - in double-sided documents, 97
    - in equations, 96
    - in multiline math environments, 96
    - space between, 411
    - width of paragraph box for, 97
  - removing end-of-line characters with, 68, 69, 464
- common errors, 39–41
- commutative diagrams, 228–230, 289
- `comp.text.tex` (newsgroup), 529
- `\complement` (C math sym.), 498
- components
  - building formulas from, 161–163
  - of formulas, 14–18, 140–163
  - of pages, 258
- Comprehensive `TEX` Archive Network, *see* CTAN
- Computer Modern (CM) fonts, 73, 73, 74, 77, 532, 533
  - bold extended, 73
  - ligatures in, 62
  - math bold italic, 183

- math italic, 183  
PostScript versions of, 31, 513, 515, **531**  
roman, 73, 183, 516  
sans serif, 73  
typewriter, 61, 62, 74  
conference proceedings, in **BIBTeX** database files, 430, 436–438  
`\cong` ( $\cong$  binary rel.), 493  
congruences, 15, 154  
    as binary operations, 154  
consecutive numbering, of proclamations, 111–112  
contents, table of, *see under tables*  
`\contentsline` (toc file com.), 475  
`\contentsname` (redef. name), 381  
context, affects style of emphasized text, 75  
continued fractions, 187  
`\contrib` (top matter com.), 266  
`\contrib` ( $\text{\LaTeX}$  distr. directory), 527  
`\controls` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 356  
controls, float, 118, **250–251**  
converting  
    files to PDF, 307  
    from articles to presentations, 314  
Cook, Tim, 539  
`\coprod` ( $\coprod$  large math op.), 156, 501  
`\copyright` ( $\circledcirc$  copyright), 64, 508  
corner math delimiters ( $\langle$ ,  $\rangle$ ,  $\lceil$ ,  $\rceil$ ), 149, 499  
corollaries, *see* proclamations  
correction, italic, *see* italic correction  
`\cos` (cos math op.), 153, 500  
`\cosh` (cosh math op.), 153, 500  
`\cot` (cot math op.), 153, 500  
`\coth` (coth math op.), 153, 500  
counters, 107, 221, 383, **406–410**  
    and `\include` commands, 407  
    and `\label` commands, 409  
    and proclamations, 406  
    arithmetic with, 301, **409–410**  
    defined in preamble, 408  
    defining, 407  
    incrementing, 409  
 $\text{\LaTeX}$ , 407  
linking with other counters, 407, 409  
names of, 112  
store numbers, 406  
styles for, 71, 107, 387, 408, **408–409**, 418  
values of, 34, 71, 408  
    printing, **63–65**, 97, **408**  
    setting, 406–407, 409  
    with `list` environments, 418  
Courier, in  $\text{\LaTeX}$  documents, 532  
`covers.pdf` (sample file), 26  
Crémer, Jacques, 350  
cross-referencing, **243–248**, **257**, 310  
among multiple documents, 301  
and automatic renumbering, 19, 34, 522  
entries made in auxiliary files for, 518  
in indexes, 463  
in `proof` environment titles, 116  
inside presentations, 316  
labels for, 19, 22, 27, 37, 40, 70, 191, 203, 219, 240, **243**, 247, 248, 257, 409  
of equations, 18–20, 22, 40, 139, 191, 207, 244  
    groups of, 205–207  
    in multiline math environments, 203  
of list items, 103, 107  
of tables, 118  
page numbers, 19, 22, **247**, 257, 486, 518  
    with `varioref` package, 301  
section numbers, 22, 107, 116, 118, 139, 203, 240, **243**, 244, 289, 518  
using ties ( $\sim$ ) with, **50**, 246  
    within **BIBTeX** databases, 438–439  
`\crossref` (**BIBTeX** database field), 431  
`\csc` (csc math op.), 153, 500  
CTAN (Comprehensive  $\text{\TeX}$  Archive Network), 298, 525, **526–528**, 529, 532, 534  
catalogue, 527  
mirrors of, 527  
packages on, 470, 528  
    `\URLs` for, 526  
`\Cup` ( $\cup$  math op.), 496  
`\cup` ( $\cup$  math op.), 496  
`\curlyeqprec` ( $\lessdot$  binary rel.), 494  
`\curlyeqsucc` ( $\gtrdot$  binary rel.), 494  
`\curlyvee` ( $\vee$  math op.), 496  
`\curlywedge` ( $\wedge$  math op.), 496  
`\curraddr` (top matter com.), 267  
    rules for using, 267  
`\curvearrowleft` ( $\curvearrowleft$  math arrow), 176, 497  
`\curvearrowright` ( $\curvearrowright$  math arrow), 176, 497  
custom commands, 39, **368–385**, 482  
    arguments of, 374–378  
    as shorthand, 368–378  
    as tokens, 516  
    command declarations in, 75  
        scope of, **371–372**, 387  
    defining, 71, 83, 116, 123, 256, 257, 368, 370, 377–381, 408  
        in preamble, 238  
    delimited, 383–385  
    for environments, 369  
    for indexing, 375, 460  
    for subformulas, 375–377  
    for text, 370  
    invoking, 370  
    multiple arguments of, 53  
    optional arguments of, 378

- rules, 370, 371
- short arguments, 377–378
  - with \def, 383
- custom environments, 385–390, 481, 484, 516
  - defining, 386
  - for custom lists, 414–422
  - optional arguments of, 389
  - short arguments, 389
- customizing, 368, 390
  - article templates
    - for AMS document classes, 282–285
    - preambles of, 282
    - top matter of, 282
  - indentation of text, 88
- LATEX, 367–424
  - dangers of, 422–424
- lists
  - and counters, 418
  - defining new, 414–422
  - theorem styles, 115
- cyrillic (LATEX distr. directory), 299
- cyrillic (pack.), 300
- \d ( „ underdot text accent), 63, 506
- \dag († dagger)
  - math symbol, 498
  - text symbol, 64, 508
- \dagger († math op.), 496
- \daleth (־ Hebrew char.), 147, 491
- dashed (TiKZ graphics pack. com.), 360–362
- dashes, 46
  - em dash (—), 11, 59, 64, 508
  - en dash (–), 11, 59, 64, 508
    - in BIBTEX databases, 433
- \dashleftarrow (↔ math arrow), 497
- \dashrightarrow (↔ math arrow), 497
- \dashv (¬ binary rel.), 493
- databases, BIBTEX, *see also* bib, 427, 429–442, 445
- \date (top matter com.), 65, 237, 265, 292, 474
  - with letter document class, 297
- \datename (redef. name), 381
- dates
  - commands for, 10, 54, 63–65, 535
  - LATEX release, 69, 239, 519
  - of packages, 520
- Davey, Brian, 39
- \day (time com.), 65
- \dbinom (display-style binomial com.), 143
- \dcolumn (pack.), 120, 301
- \ddag (‡ dagger)
  - math symbol, 498
  - text symbol, 64, 508
- \ddagger (‡ math op.), 496
- \ddot (̄ math accent), 158, 502
- \ddot (̄̄ math accent), 158, 502
- \ddots (‘.. diagonal ellipsis), 144, 223
- decimals, alignment on, 120, 301
- declarations, command, *see* command declarations
- \DeclareMathOperator (op. def. com.), 39, 182, 183, 186, 238, 289, 379
- \DeclareMathOperator\* (op. with limits def. com.), 182, 380
- declaring, types of math symbols, 182
- \dedicator (top matter com.), 265
- \def (TEX com.), 424
  - defining commands with, 39, 383
  - overwriting previously defined commands with, 383
- \definition (procl. style), 113, 113–115
- \deg (deg math op.), 153, 500
- \delarray (pack.), 301
- delimited commands, 383–385
  - invoking, 383
- delimiters
  - for displayed math environments, 13, 19, 41
  - for inline math environments, 13, 58, 136–137
  - for \verb commands, 131
  - in BIBTEX database files, 430
  - math, *see* math delimiters
- \Delta (Δ Greek char.), 148, 492
- \delta (δ Greek char.), 147, 492
- depth
  - of tables of contents, 410
  - of text boxes, 93, 96, 413, 413
- \depth (length com.), 92, 93, 96
- description (text list env.), 102, 104–105
- design
  - logical, 35, 235
  - of books, 481–483
  - of document classes, 512
  - visual, 35, 235, 258–260, 345
- \det (det math op.), 153, 500
- device independent files, *see* DVI files
- \frac ( $\frac{x}{y}$ ), 141, 169, 187
- \DH (Eth Eur. char.), 509
- \dh (eth Eur. char.), 509
- \diagdown (＼ math sym.), 498
- diagonal ellipses, 223
- diagrams, commutative, *see* commutative diagrams
- \diagup (／ math sym.), 498
- \Diamond (◊ math sym.), 498
- \diamond (◊ math op.), 496
- \diamondsuit (◊ math sym.), 498
- dieresis, *see* umlaut

- thesis (‡)  
    math symbol, 496, 498  
    text symbol, 64, 508
- \digamma ( $\digamma$  Greek char.), 147, 492
- \dim (dim math op.), 153, 500
- dimensions, *see also* measurements  
    units for measuring, 11, 73, 77, 79, 80, 90,  
        92, 95, 174, 296, 411, 503  
    with length commands, 411
- directories, *see under* AMS and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X distributions
- \displaybreak (display break com.), 231  
    optional argument of, 231
- displayed formulas, *see displayed math environments*, *see displayed math environments*
- displayed fractions, *see under* fractions
- displayed math environments, 17–24, 41, 136  
    \[] (start math mode), 13, 41, 136  
    *Visual Guide to*, 195, 196  
    \] (end math mode), 13, 41, 136  
    act as special braces, 136  
    align, 21–23, 41, 196, 198, 207–211, 218,  
        219, 230  
    align\*, 22, 209, 214  
    alignat, 41, 196, 198, 211–213  
    blank lines in, 37  
    breaking pages in, 230–231  
    displaymath, 136, 137, 139, 140, 219  
    eqnarray, 209–210  
    equation, 18, 23, 139–140, 189, 219, 316  
    equation\*, 19, 140, 140, 189, 219, 316  
    flalign, 196, 198, 209, 219  
    font size in, 186  
    gather, 41, 196, 198, 199–200, 206, 219,  
        230  
    gather\*, 199  
    in direct succession, 484  
    inline-style binomials in, 143  
    multiline, 196, 198, 200–202  
    multiline\*, 201–202  
    subequations, 190, 191, 206, 409
- displayed text environments, 101, 127–131  
    alltt, 143, 299  
    blank lines in, 102  
    multicols, 86, 513  
    quotation, 128  
    quote, 40, 127  
    tabbing, 125–127  
    tabular, 62, 117–124, 226, 249, 300, 301,  
        513  
    theorem, 35, 109, 112, 330, 388  
    verbatim, 129–131, 132, 301  
    verse, 128–129  
    xcb, 478
- \displaymath (disp. math env.), 136, 137, 139,  
    140, 219
- \displaystyle (math font size com.), 186, 191
- dissertations, in BIB<sup>L</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X database files, 439–440
- distributions  
    AMS packages, 261, 288–290, 313, 385, 424,  
        442, 443, 511  
    L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, 62, 69, 246, 291–296, 298–302, 515,  
        516, 519, 520, 527, 528, 535  
    PSNFSS, 532–533  
    T<sub>E</sub>X, 515
- \div (÷ math op.), 141, 496
- \divideontimes (× math op.), 496
- division, 14, 47, 141, 175, 496
- \DJ (Dyet Eur. char.), 509
- \dj (dyet Eur. char.), 509
- doc (L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X distr. directory), 299
- document (text env.), 8, 52, 161, 236
- document class options  
    9pt, 285  
    10pt, 88, 285, 294  
    11pt, 285, 294  
    12pt, 77, 285, 294  
    a4paper, 286, 294  
    a5paper, 294  
    are passed on to packages, 238  
    b5paper, 294  
    centertags, 286  
    combining, 296  
    draft, 81, 237, 288, 294  
    executivepaper, 294  
    final, 288, 294  
    fleqn, 137, 286, 295  
    for AMSFonts, 288  
    for bibliographies, 296, 296  
    for double-column documents, 287, 295  
    for double-sided printing, 287, 295, 474  
    for font sizes, 285, 294  
    for page orientation, 295  
    for position of equation numbers, 286, 295  
    for start of chapters, 474  
    for title pages, 287, 295, 474  
    handout, 346  
    landscape, 295  
    legalpaper, 69, 286, 294  
    leqno, 286, 295  
    letterpaper, 286, 294  
    noamsfonts, 288  
    nomath, 288  
    notitlepage, 287, 295, 474  
    onecolumn, 287, 295  
    oneside, 287, 295, 474  
    openany, 474  
    openbib, 296, 296  
    openright, 474

- `psamsfonts`, 288
- `reqno`, **286**, 295
- `tbtags`, **286**
- `titlepage`, 237, **287**, 295, 474
- `trans`, 346
- `twocolumn`, 69, 86, 249, **287**, 295, 296, 301
- `twoside`, 69, 237, **287**, 295, 296, 474
- document classes, 35, 65, 220, *381*, 516
  - `amsart`, 24–290, 471, 474, 516, 522
  - `amsbook`, xxx, 31, 241, 471, 474, 478, 516
  - `amsproc`, 263, 516
  - anatomy of, 24
  - `article`, 26, 31, 177, 237, 239, 242, 253, 255, 262, 290, 291, **291–296**, 516
  - `beamer`, 313–347
  - `book`, xxx, 31, 241, 471, 474, 476, 514, 516
  - changing, 523
  - `cls` files, 238, 380, 418
  - design of, 512
  - determine
    - placement of equation numbers, 286, 295
    - position of equations, 286, 295
    - spacing, 86
  - for books, 31, 241, 471, **472–474**, 476, 478, 514, 516
  - options of, 474
  - for presentations, *see under beamer*
  - legacy, 102, 237, 242, 253, 262, 290, 293, **291–302**, 516
  - `letter`, 296–298, 516
  - `proc`, 516
  - `proc-1`, 262
  - `report`, 241, 291, **291–296**, 516
  - `sample`, 8
  - `sample.cls`, 8
  - `slides`, 291, 516
- document font families, 6, 10, 74, **73–74**, 77, **107**, 146, 289, 396, 420, 506, 532
  - normal, 74
  - roman, **74**, 532
  - sans serif, **74**, 532
  - typewriter style, **74**, 532
- documentation
  - for `beamer` document class, 313, 346
  - for `LATeX`, 299
  - packages, 300
- `\documentclass` (preamble com.), 5, 24, **53**, 69, 164, 228, 237, 282, 314, 342, 350
  - and `\NeedsTeXFormat` command, 238
- documents
  - body of, 8, 25, 52, 161, **236–258**
  - cross-referencing among multiple, 301
  - design of, 258–260
  - `LATeX`, 235–260
    - on the Internet, 305–311
- using AMS document classes in, 261
- legacy, 307
- master, 479–481
- preamble of, 237–239
- printing and viewing, 6, 307, 517
- readability of, 77, 345
- scanning originals, 307
- splitting into multiple files, 479–481
- dollar sign (\$), *see also \$ and \\$*, **7**
  - as inline math delimiter, 12, 13, 58, 136, **136**, 508
    - as text symbol, 61, 64
- Doob, Michael, 94, 350, 515, 557
- `\dot` (x math accent), **158**, 502
- `\doteq` (= binary rel.), 493, 494
- `\dotfill` (space fill com.), 90
- dotless i and j (i and j), **63**, 63, 506
- `\dotplus` (+ math op.), 496
- dots
  - filling lines with, 90
- `\dots` (... math ellipsis com.), 16, 41, 62, 143–144, 170
- `\dotsb` (... math com.), 144
- `\dotsc` (... math com.), 144
- `\dotsi` (... math com.), 144
- `\dotsm` (... math com.), 144
- `\dotso` (... math com.), 144
- dotted (Ti<sub>Z</sub> graphics pack. com.), 356, 360
- double accents, in math, **157**
- double acute (” text accent), **63**, 506
- double dagger (‡)
  - math symbol, 496, 498
  - text symbol, 64, 508
- double guillemet, 509
- double quote ("), 7, *see also* quotation marks, **59**, 64, 508
  - in `\index` commands, 463
  - in Bi<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X database fields, 451, **452**
  - key, 7, 47, 59
- double spacing, 83
- double subscripts and superscripts, font size of, 186
- double vertical lines in CD environments, 229
- double-column
  - documents
    - and footnotes, 301
    - document class options for, 69, 287, 295
    - figures and tables, 249
- double-sided printing
  - and marginal comments, 97
  - document class options for, 69, 287, 295, 474
- `\doublebarwedge` (⊐̄ math op.), 496
- `\doublecap` (⊓̄ math op.), 496
- `\doublecup` (⊔̄ math op.), 496

- \doublespacing (*setspace* com.), 83
- \Downarrow ( $\Downarrow$ )
  - math arrow, 497, 499
  - math delimiter, 149
- \downarrow ( $\downarrow$ )
  - math arrow, 497
  - math delimiter, 149, 499
- \downdownarrows ( $\Downarrow$  math arrow), 497
- Downes, Michael, 452, 453, 513, 514
- \downharpoonleft ( $\Downarrow$  math arrow), 497
- \downharpoonright ( $\Downarrow$  math arrow), 497
- draft** (doc. class opt.), 81, 237, 288, 294
- \draw (*TikZ* graphics com.), 352, 360
- drivers
  - printer, 34, 300, 307, 517, 527
  - video (DVI viewer), 517
  - video), 34
- Dropbox file transferring, 541, 544, 548, 550
- Duchier, Denys, 513
- Duma, Jacques, 364, 560
- Dupré, Lyn, 68, 557
- DVI files, 517, 527
  - printing, 517
  - viewing, 517
- dvipdf (opt. of *hyperref* pack.), 307
- dvipdfm (opt. of *hyperref* pack.), 307
- dvipdfmx (opt. of *hyperref* pack.), 307
- dvips (opt. of *hyperref* pack.), 307
- dvipsnam (opt. of *xcolor* pack.), 337
- dvipsone (opt. of *hyperref* pack.), 307
- dviwindo (opt. of *hyperref* pack.), 307
- dyet (Eur. char), 509
- Ebib bibl. manager, 452
- editing cycle, 5
- edition** (*BIBTeX* database field), 431
- editor** (*BIBTeX* database field), 431
- editors, text, 5, 6, 12, 32, 36, 47, 68, 72, 369, 543
- Eijkhout, Victor, 555, 557
- electronic mail address, *see* \email
- \ell ( $\ell$  math sym.), 498
- ellipse** (*TikZ* graphics pack. com.), 355, 358
- ellipses (...)

  - centered (...), 16, 144
  - diagonal, 223
  - in math, 16, 143–144, 221
  - in text, 62
  - vertical, 223

- \em (font shape com. dec.), 74, 75, 77, 107, 372, 387, 506
- \em (font shape env.), 107
- \em (rel. unit), 411, 503
- em dash (—), 11, 59, 64, 67, 508
- EM fonts, *see* European Modern fonts
- Emacs, 452
- \email (top matter com.), 267–268, 271–273, 283, 284
  - rules for using, 267–268
- \emph (font shape com.), 6, 10, 51, 74, 75, 325, 506
- emphasized (font shape), 6, 10, 19, 51, 74, 75, 76, 107, 109, 139, 140, 372, 387, 506
  - and italic correction, 77
  - context dependence of, 75
- \empty (page style), 258
- empty group ( $\{\}$ ), 54, 142, 160, 172, 173, 181, 191, 269, 297
- \emptyset ( $\emptyset$  math sym.), 498
- en dash (—), 11, 64, 67, 508
  - in *BIBTeX* databases, 433
- \enclname (redef. name), 381
- encodings, font, *see* font encodings
- \end (end of env.), 51, 52, 55
  - errors with, 56, 130, 480
- \end angle (*TikZ* graphics pack. com.), 355
- \endinput (input ending com.), 399, 480
- eng (Eur. char), 509
- \enlargethispage (spacing com.), 85, 486, 488
- \enlargethispage\* (spacing com.), 85
- \ensuremath (math mode com.), 373, 374, 379
- Enter key, *see* Return key
- entries
  - glossary, *see under* glossaries
  - index, *see under* indexing
- \enumerate (list text env.), 301, 387
- \enumerate (pack.), 107, 301, 387, 391
- \enumi (counter), 107, 407
- \enumii (counter), 407
- \enumiv (counter), 407
- environments, 6, 10, 13, 51–58
  - \*-ed forms, 140, 189, 199, 201, 203, 219, 249
  - act as braces, 55
  - arguments of, *see under* arguments or specific environments
  - \\\ in, 108, 129
  - begin with \begin, 52, 55
  - body of, 52
  - case-sensitivity of names of, 53
  - custom, *see* custom environments, *see* custom environments
  - end with \end, 52, 55
  - font size, 107
  - for figures and graphics, *see under* *TikZ*
  - for presentations, *see under* *beamer* and *FoilTeX*
  - for tables, *see* tables
  - indenting contents of, in source file, 139
  - legacy, 107, 127–129, 414

- list, *see* list text environments, *see* list text environments
- logical design using, 522
- typesetting environment names, 522
- math, *see under* inline and displayed math environments, subsidiary math environments, and displayed text environments modifying, 385–388
- \newline in, 83
- operating, *see under* Windows computer, Mac, and UNIX
- short, 389
- subsidiary math, *see* subsidiary math environments
- visual design using
- typesetting environment names, 522
- EPS (Encapsulated PostScript) files, 479
- \epsilon (ε Greek char.), 147, 492
- \eqcirc (≈ binary rel.), 494
- \eqnarray (math align. env.), 209–210
- \eqref (cross-ref. com.), 19, 22, 40, 139, 140, 191, 203, 207, 243, 244, 254, 316, 374
- \eqslantgt; (> binary rel.), 494
- \eqslantless (< binary rel.), 494
- equals (=)
  - binary relation, 47, 493
  - in BIBTEX database fields, 430
  - key, 7
- equation (counter), 406, 407
- equation (disp. math env.), 18, 23, 139–140, 189, 219, 316
  - blank lines in, 140
- equation\* (disp. math env.), 19, 140, 140, 189, 219, 316
- \equationname (hyperref redef. name), 311
- equations, 18–20
  - document class options for placement of numbers, 286, 295
  - grouping, 190–191
  - in multiline math environments, 203
  - in presentations, 316
  - labels for, 19, 244
  - marginal comments in, 96
  - numbering of, 18–20, 40, 139–140, 189, 199, 201, 203
  - groups, 205–207
    - in chapters of books, 472
    - preventing, 22, 140, 189, 199, 201, 203, 206, 219
  - variants, 190, 206
  - within sections, 19, 140, 238
  - position of, 286, 295
  - systems of, 212–213
- tagging, 20, 189–191, 199, 201, 203, 206, 217, 219
- \equiv (≡)
  - binary relation, 493
  - math operator, 15, 155, 165, 376, 384
- error messages
  - Missing \right. inserted, 204
- errors
  - common, 39–41
- eszett (ß, SS), 64, 505, 536
- \eta (η Greek char.), 147, 492
- \eth (ð math sym.), 498
- eth (Eur. char.), 509
- eucal (pack.), 289, 290, 391, 502
  - options, 289, 396, 502
- eufrak (pack.), 289
- Euler Fraktur (math alphabet), 164, 184, 289, 396, 502
- Euler Script (math alphabet), 289, 290, 396, 502
- European
  - accents, 11, 63
  - characters, 11, 63, 505–506, 509
  - quotation marks, 509
- European Modern (EM) fonts, 514
- every picture (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 353
- ex (rel. unit), 411
- examples
  - of bibliographies, 251–253, 427–429
  - of indexes, 456–458
  - of nonbreakable spaces (~ spacing com.), 60
  - of top matter commands, 271–274
- \except (table of contents com.), 475
- exclamation marks (!), 7, 46
  - as float control, 251, 488
  - in \index commands, 459, 460, 463
  - Spanish (¡), 64, 505, 508
  - terminating sentences with, 48–51
- executivepaper (doc. class opt.), 294
- exercises, 478
  - in books, 478
  - within a section, 478
- \exists (∃ math sym.), 498
- existing, from interactive mode, 521
- \exp (exp math op.), 153, 500
  - expanding values of counters, 63, 65, 408
- exscale (pack.), 289, 299
- extensibility of LATEX and TEX, 31
- Fairbanks, Robin, 513
- \fallingdotseq (≡ binary rel.), 494
- fancyhdr (pack.), 260, 525, 528
- FAQ (Frequently Asked Questions), 527, 529
- \fboxrule (length com.), 94
- \fboxsep (length com.), 94
- \fcolorbox (beamer com.), 336

- fd** (font def. file), **532**, 533, 534  
Fear, Simon, 124  
fields, bibliographic, *see under bib*  
**figure** (counter), **407**  
**figure** (float env.), **249–250**, 315, **349–350**  
    optional arguments of, 250, 488  
    placement of, 486, 488  
**figure\*** (float env.), **249**  
\bfigurename (redef. name), **380**, 381  
    and **hyperref** package, **311**  
figures, **249–250**, **349**  
    captions in, 478  
        fragile commands in, 58  
    commands for, **249**, 478, **481**  
    double-column, 249  
    forcing typesetting of, 86  
    lists of, *see also under lists*, 477–478  
        adding a line to, 478  
        fragile commands in, 58  
        numbering of, 248, 249  
        old-style, 46  
        placement of, **250**, 251, 486, 488  
file formats, PDF, for graphics, **249**  
file transfer protocol, *see* **FTP**  
file transferring  
    Dropbox, 541, 544, 548, 550  
    iTunes for iPad, 544  
    the Cloud, 548  
FileApp  
    **LATEX** app for iPad, 541  
**fileerr** (pack.), 301  
files  
    *MakeIndex* log, *see* **ilg**  
    auxiliary, *see* **aux**  
    BBITEX log, *see* **blk**  
    BBITEX style, *see* **bst**  
    class (**cls**), *see under* document classes  
    command, *see* command files  
    converting from articles to presentations, 314  
    documents composed of multiple, 479–481  
    DVI, *see* DVI files  
    font definition, *see* **fd**  
    font metric, *see also* **tfm**, *see under* font metrics  
        rics  
    glossary, *see* **glo**  
    hyperref bookmarks, *see* **out**  
    including in other files, 391, **480**  
    index entry, *see* **idx**  
    list  
        of figures, *see* **lof**  
        of tables, *see* **lot**  
    listing those used by a document, 392  
    log, *see* **log** files  
    naming of  
        with \graphicspath command, 481  
organization of, 479–481  
package source, *see under* packages  
Portable Document Format, *see* **PDF**  
PostScript (PS), *see under* PostScript  
processed index, *see* **ind**  
sample, *see* sample files  
source, *see* source files  
start on new page with \include command, 480  
style, *see* **sty**  
tables of contents, *see* **toc**  
terminating, 399, **480**  
**fill** (**TiKZ** graphics pack. com.), 352  
filling horizontal space, **90–91**, 98, 110, 169, 221, 224, 422  
**final** (doc. class opt.), 288, 294  
final preparation, of books, 484–489  
fine tuning  
    of mathematical formulas, 174–176  
    placement of root with \sqrt, 145  
    placement of text boxes, 99  
\Finv (± math sym.), **498**  
**firstarticle.tex** (sample file), 24, 35, 36  
**firstarticlei.idx** (index entry file), 465, 466, 467  
**firstarticlei.ilg** (index log file), 467  
**firstarticlei.ind** (index proc. file), 465–467  
**firstarticlei.tex** (sample file), 458, 466, 467  
**firstarticleill.tex** (sample file), 27  
**firstpresentation.tex** (sample file), 27  
fixed-size math delimiters, 150  
**fixltx2e.dtx**, 299  
**fixltx2e.ins**, 299  
**fixltx2e.sty**, 299, 300  
**flalign** (math align. env.), 196, 198, **209**, 219  
\flat (♭ math sym.), **498**  
**fleqn** (doc. class opt.), 137, **286**, 295  
floats, 248–251  
    commands, 27, 248, 251  
    controls, 118, **250–251**  
    environments, 117, **248–250**  
        **figure**, **249–250**, 250, 315, **349**  
        **figure\***, 249  
        locating, 486, 488  
        **table**, 118, **248**, 250  
        **table\***, 249  
        forcing typesetting of, 86  
        specifying placement of, **250**, 251, 486  
    floor math delimiters, 149, 499  
flush left  
    alignment of formulas, 195, 198, 200, 202, 209, 295  
    column alignment, 220, 224  
    columns in **tabular** environments, 119  
    setting equations, 286, 295

**flush right**  
 alignment of formulas, 195, 198, 200, 202, 209  
 alignment of text, 90  
 column alignment, 220, 224  
 columns in *tabular* environments, 119  
 setting equations, 286, 295  
**flushleft** (text align. env.), 108, 414  
 breaking lines in, 108  
**flushright** (text align. env.), 51, 108, 414  
 breaking lines in, 108  
**fnsymbol** (footnote counter style com.), 71  
**folders**  
 structure of, 479–481  
**font command declarations**, *see also* font commands, 75  
 for shape  
 $\text{\em}$ , 74, 75, 77, 107, 506  
 $\text{\itshape}$ , 74, 75, 76–78, 107, 420, 506  
 $\text{\normalfont}$ , 74, 74, 107, 146, 506, 533  
 $\text{\rmfamily}$ , 74, 107, 506  
 $\text{\scshape}$ , 74, 75, 107, 506  
 $\text{\sffamily}$ , 74, 78, 107, 506  
 $\text{\slshape}$ , 74, 75, 77–79, 107, 506  
 $\text{\ttfamily}$ , 74, 107, 126, 506  
 $\text{\upshape}$ , 74, 75, 107, 387, 420, 506  
 for weight  
 $\text{\bfseries}$ , 55, 57, 74, 77, 78, 79, 107, 506  
 $\text{\mdseries}$ , 74, 77, 506  
**font commands**, *see also* font command declarations  
 and italic correction, 75, 77  
 and *MakeIndex*, 75  
 for selecting fonts using family names, 532  
 for series  
 $\text{\textmd}$ , 74, 77, 506  
 for shape  
 $\text{\emph}$ , 10, 51, 74, 75, 325, 506  
 $\text{\textit}$ , 74, 75, 325, 506  
 $\text{\textnormal}$ , 74, 74, 146, 506  
 $\text{\textrm}$ , 74, 289, 506  
 $\text{\textsc}$ , 74, 75, 506  
 $\text{\textsf}$ , 74, 506  
 $\text{\textsl}$ , 74, 75, 506  
 $\text{\texttt}$ , 10, 60, 74, 506  
 $\text{\textup}$ , 74, 75, 506  
 $\text{\upn}$ , 140  
 for size  
 $\text{\footnotesize}$ , 77, 78, 507  
 $\text{\Huge}$ , 77, 78, 507  
 $\text{\huge}$ , 77, 78, 507  
 $\text{\LARGE}$ , 77, 78, 507  
 $\text{\Large}$ , 77, 78, 78, 507  
 $\text{\large}$ , 77, 78, 507  
 $\text{\larger}$ , 78  
 $\text{\normalsize}$ , 77, 78, 507  
 $\text{\scriptsize}$ , 77, 78, 507  
 $\text{\small}$ , 77, 78, 507  
 $\text{\tiny}$ , 77, 78, 507  
 $\text{\tiny}$ , 77, 78, 507  
 for weight  
 $\text{\textbf}$ , 10, 57, 74, 77, 147, 289, 325, 506  
 low-level, 79  
 math, *see* math font commands  
 obsolete, 79  
 orthogonality of, 78–79  
 two-letter (obs. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09), and italic correction, 79  
 using in math environments, 146  
**font encodings**, 61, 62  
 $\text{\koi8-u}$ , 536  
 $\text{\LY1}$ , 533, 534  
 $\text{\OT1}$ , 532  
 $\text{\T1}$ , 66, 509, 535  
**font environments**  
 for series  
 $\text{\bfseries}$ , 107  
 for shape  
 $\text{\em}$ , 107  
 $\text{\itshape}$ , 107  
 $\text{\rmfamily}$ , 107  
 $\text{\scshape}$ , 107  
 $\text{\sffamily}$ , 107  
 $\text{\slshape}$ , 107  
 $\text{\ttfamily}$ , 107  
 $\text{\upshape}$ , 107  
 for weight  
 $\text{\bfseries}$ , 107  
**font families, document**, *see* document font families  
**font metrics files**, 306, 516, 532, 533  
**font series**, 73, 77  
 command declarations for, *see* command declarations  
 commands for, *see under* font commands  
 environments for, *see under* font environments  
**font shapes**  
 command declarations for, *see under* font command declarations  
 commands for, *see under* font commands  
 environments for, *see under* font environments  
 sans serif, 73  
 serif, 73  
**font substitution**, 78, 306, 485

- warning messages, 78
- font weight, 73
- command declarations for, *see under* font command declarations
  - commands for, *see under* font commands environments for, *see under* font environments
  - font width, 73
- `\fontenc` (pack.), 533, 535, 536
- `\fontfamily` (font selection com.), 532
- fonts
- `AMSFonts`, 288, 289–290
    - document class options for, 288
    - obtaining, 528
    - PostScript versions of, 288, 289, 514, 515, 520
    - technical support for, 529
    - updates to, 520
  - bitmap, 531
  - blackboard bold, 165, 184, 396
  - bold math, 168, 183, 183, 185, 502
  - calligraphic, 169, 184, 289, 396, 502
  - commands, *see under* font commands and font command declarations
  - Computer Modern, *see* Computer Modern
  - Courier (typewriter shape), 305, 532
  - encodings, *see* font encodings
  - Euler Fraktur, 164, 184, 289, 396, 502
  - Euler Script, 289, 290, 396, 502
  - European Modern (EM), *see* European Modern fonts
  - for text in math mode, 146
  - Helvetica, 74, 532
  - including in PDF files, 306
  - including in PostScript files, 305
  - Lucida Bright, 531, 534
  - math, 182–184
    - size of, 186
  - monospaced, 72, 73
  - names of
    - `\LATEX` 2.09, 301
    - `\PSNFSS` (Berry scheme), 532
  - PostScript, *see under* PostScript
  - proportional, 72, 73
  - proprietary
    - using in PDF files, 306
    - using in PostScript files, 305
  - samples, 301
  - selecting, 72–80
    - with `\fontfamily` command, 532
    - with `\selectfont` command, 79, 532
  - shapes, *see* font shapes
  - size of, 40, 73, 78, 507, 77–507
    - document class options for, 285, 294
  - sources for, 534
- STIX, 177
- substitution of, 78, 306, 485
- Times, 74, 532–533
- typewriter style, 72, 73
- weight, *see* font weight
- width, *see* font width
- `\fontmpl (pack.)`, 301
- `\fonttbl.tex` (sample file), 62, 118
- footers, page, 258–260
- `\footnote`, 71
- `\footnote` (counter), 407
- footnotes, 71–72
  - and double-column documents, 301
  - fragile commands in, 58
  - in `\minipage` environments, 96
  - indicated by symbols, 71
  - on title pages, 72
  - unmarked, 269
- `\footnotesize`, 77, 78, 507
- `\forall` ( $\forall$  math sym.), 498
- forcing
  - floats to typeset, 86
  - indentation, 84
- formats
- `\LATEX`, 516
  - `\TeX`
    - creating with `\initex`, 515
    - files read by `\virtex`, 515
    - Plain `\TeX`, 515
- formatting of documents, determined by document classes, 45
- `\formulanote.tex` (sample file), 12–14, 38–39
- formulas, 6, 13
  - adjusted, 198, 220–230
    - flush left and right, 202
    - aligning, 21–23, 195–198, 207–220, 230, 286, 514
      - multiline, 205
      - rules for, 205, 208
      - text in, 213–215
    - annotating, 212
  - boxed, *see under* boxes
    - breaking into multiple lines, 22, 205
      - displayed, 41
      - rules for, 205
    - commas in, 139
    - components of, 14–18, 140–146
      - building using, 161–163
    - displayed, *see* displayed math environments, *see also* displayed math environments
  - gallery, 164–170
  - grouping, 198, 199–200
  - inline, *see* inline math environments
  - multiline, 21–23, 41
    - splitting, 200–202

- numbering, *see under* equation
  - specifying fonts for, 146
- foundries, type, 532, 534
- `\frac` ( $\frac{x}{y}$ ), 14, 15, 53, **141**, 169, 187
- fractions, 14, 15, 53, **141**, 169
  - continued, 187
  - displayed, **141**, 169
  - generalized, 191–192
  - inline, 141
- fragile commands, 58
  - protecting, **58**, 240, 241, 472, 477
- `\frame` (beamer env.), 28–30, 315, 316, 331
- `\framebox`, 93
- frames, *see also under* presentations, **315**, 345
  - environments of, 315
  - outline (table of contents), 316
  - titles, 28–30, 315, 345
- `\frametitle` (beamer com.), 28–30, 315, 316, 332
- `\frenchspacing` (spacing com.), 51
- Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), 527, 529
- front matter, 473
  - numbering of chapters in, 473
  - of AMS documents, 274
  - of books, **475–477**
- `\frontmatter` (struct. com.), 473
- `\frown` ( $\smile$  binary rel.), 493
- `\ftnright` (pack.), 301
- FTP (File Transfer Protocol), 526
- `\Game` ( $\mathfrak{G}$  math sym.), 498
- `\Gammaamma` ( $\Gamma$  Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\gammamma` ( $\gamma$  Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\gather` (disp. math env.), 41, 196, 198, **199–200**, 206, 219, 485
  - page breaks in, 230
  - rules for, 199
- `\gather*` (disp. math env.), 199
- `\gathered` (subsidiary math env.), 198, 215–217, 219
  - and `\allowdisplaybreaks`
  - commands, 231
- `\gcd` (gcd math op.), 153, 500
- `\ge` ( $\geq$  binary rel.), 493
  - generalized
  - commands, *see* custom commands
  - fractions, 191–192
- `\genfrac` (math com.), **191–192**
- `\geometry` (pack.), 41, 260
- `\geq` ( $\geq$  binary rel.), 493
- `\geqq` ( $\geq\geq$  binary rel.), 494
- `\geqslant` ( $\geq\geq$  binary rel.), 494
- `\german` (opt. of babel pack.), 536
- `\german.tex` (sample file), 536
- `\gg` ( $\gg$  binary rel.), 493
- `ggamsart.tpl` (template file), 285
- `\ggg` ( $\gg\gg$  binary rel.), 494
- `\gimel` ( $\beth$  Hebrew char.), **147**, 491
- `\glo` (glossary files), 470, 518
- global commands, *see under* scope
- glossaries, 470
  - as a custom list environment, 421
  - auxiliary file (`glo`), 470, 518
  - defining, 470, 518
- `\glossary` (glossary com.), 470, 518
- `\glue`, **383**, 416, **517**, 517
  - horizontal, 517
  - parameters of, 517
  - vertical, *see also under* vertical spacing, 517
- glyphs, *see also* characters
  - measuring, 517
- `\gnapprox` ( $\approx$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\gneq` ( $\not\equiv$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\gneqq` ( $\not\geq$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\gnsim` ( $\not\sim$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- Google, 470, 526
- Goossens, Michel, xxxi, 558, 560
- graphics
  - commands for, 250, **250**, 315, 330, 350–353, 481
  - in presentations, 330
- formats
  - PDF, 249
  - including in documents, 249–250, 349–364
- Inkspace, 27
- scaling, 250
- `\tikzname` (pack.), 350
- TikZ (graphics pack.)
  - `\tikzpicture` (graphics env.), 350
- TikZ (pack.), 27, 249, 350
  - `above` com., 357
  - `align` com., 357
  - `arc` com., 355
  - `around` com., 359
  - `arrow` com., 361–363
  - `below` com., 354, **357**
  - `center` com., 358
  - `circle` com., 351–355, 359
  - colors, 360
  - components, 353–357
  - `controls` com., 356
  - curves, 356–357
  - `dashed` com., 360–362
  - `dotted` com., 356, 360
  - `\draw` com., **350–352**
  - `ellipse` com., 355, 358
  - `end angle` com., 355
  - `every picture` com., 353
  - `fill` com., 352
  - `grid` com., 350, 352
  - `in` com., 356, 361

- labels, 352, 357
- `left` com., 357, 362
- `line width` com., 351, 353, 360
- `out` com., 356, 361
- path attributes, 360–363
- `radius` com., 351
- `rectangle` com., 355, 358, 359
- `right` com., 357, 362
- `rotate` com., 358
- `scale` com., 359
- `semithick` com., 360
- `shift` com., 359
- `start angle` com., 355
- `thick` com., 357, 360
- `thin` com., 360
- `\tikzset` com., 353
- transformations, 358–360
- `ultra thick` com., 360
- `ultra thin` com., 360
- `very thick` com., 356, 360, 361
- `very thin` com., 360
- `xscale` com., 359
- `yscale` com., 359
- `graphics` ( $\text{\LaTeX}$  distr. directory), 299, 527
- `graphics` (pack.), 300
- `\graphicspath` (`graphics` com.), 479
- `graphicx` (pack.), 26, 176, 238, 249–250, 288, 513
- grave (` grave text accent), 46, 63, 506
- `\grave` (à math accent), 158, 502
- greater than (>)
  - as binary relation, 493
  - text symbol, 64, 508
- Greek letters, 147, 148, 165, 393–396, 492
- Greenwade, George D., 83
- `grid` ( $\text{TikZ}$  graphics pack. com.), 350, 352
- grouping
  - chapters into parts, 472
  - equations, 190–191
  - formulas, 198, 199–200
- groups
  - of equations, 190–191
  - cross-referencing, 205–207
  - labels for, 191
  - numbering, 205–207
  - of tokens, 517
- `\gtrapprox` (≥ binary rel.), 494
- `\gtrdot` (> binary rel.), 494
- `\gtreqless` (≥ binary rel.), 494
- `\gtreqqless` (≥ binary rel.), 494
- `\gtrless` (≥ binary rel.), 494
- `\gtrsim` (≥ binary rel.), 494
- guillemets, 509
- `\guilsingleleft` (Eur. quot. mark), 509
- `\guilsingright` (Eur. quot. mark), 509
- Gürari, Eitan, 558
- `\gvertneqq` (⊉ neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\H` double acute text accent (‘), 63, 506
- Hahn, Harley, 555, 559
- `handout` (`beamer` doc. class opt.), 346
- `\hangafter`
  - $\text{\TeX}$  command, 382
  - length command, 84
- `\hangindent` (length com.), 84
- hanging indentation, 84, 129
- Hargreaves, Kathryn A., 555, 557
- Harrison, Michael A., 455, 469, 557
- Hart, Horace, 555, 559
- `\hat` (à̂ math accent), 16, 158, 502
- `\hbar` (h̄ math sym.), 498
- `\hdotsfor` (space fill com.), 169, 222, 224
  - optional argument of, 222
- headers, page, *see* running heads
- headings (page style), 258
- `\headtoname` (redef. name), 381
- `\heartsuit` (♥ math sym.), 498
- Hebrew letters, 147, 491
- `\height` (length com.), 92, 93, 96
- height, of text boxes, 93, 94, 96, 97, 413, 413
- Helvetica (sans serif font), 74, 532
- `\hfill` (space fill com.), 90, 110, 115, 422
- `\Hfootnotename` (`hyperref` redef. name), 311
- `\hfuzz` (`\hbox` warning adjustment), 81
- `\hhline` (pack.), 124, 301
- hierarchy of structural commands, 240, 241, 472
- history of  $\mathcal{AM}$ S- $\text{\LaTeX}$ , AMS- $\text{\TeX}$ ,  $\text{\TeX}$ , and  $\text{\LT}$  $\text{\TeX}$ , 511–515
- `\hline` (table com.), 119, 121
- Høgholm, Morten, 193
- `\hom` (hom math op.), 153, 500
- `\hookleftarrow` (↔ math arrow), 497
- `\hookrightarrow` (↪ math arrow), 497
- horizontal lines (rules), in `tabular` environments, 119, 121
- horizontal spacing, 302
  - commands
    - `\_` (interword space), 9, 50, 54, 86, 174, 510
    - `\!` (negthinspace), 166, 174, 174, 503, 510
    - `\,` (thinspace), 16, 51, 59, 174, 174, 503, 510
    - `\:` (medspace), 174, 503, 510
    - `\;` (thickspace), 174, 503, 510
    - `\@.` (intersentence space), 510
  - `\dotfill` (fill com.), 90
  - `\frenchspacing`, 51

- \hdotsfor (fill com.), **169**, 222, 224
- \hfill (fill com.), 90, 110, 115, 422
- \hrulefill (fill com.), 90, 98
- \hspace, **86**, 126
- \hspace\*, 40, 53, 87–88
- \medspace, **174**, 503, 510
- \mspace, **174**, **174**, 503
- \negmedspace, **174**, 503, 510
- \negthickspace, **174**, 503, 510
- \negthinspace, **166**, **174**, **174**, 503, 510
- \nobreakspace, 60
- \nonfrenchspacing, 51
- \phantom, **87**, 173, **175–176**, 211, 413
- \qqquad, 86, 90, 174, **174**, 212, 503, 510
- \quad, 18, 86, 90, 138, 174, **174**, 212, 503, 510
- \thickspace, **174**, 503, 510
- \thinspace, 16, 51, 59, 174, **174**, 503, 510
  - to avoid using, 483
- \xspace, 372–373
- in math, **13**, **138–139**, **171–176**, 221, 224
- in text, 9, 40, **48–51**, **86–88**, 98, 110, 422, 503, 510
  - intersentence, 9, 48–51
  - interword space (\_), 9, 48–51, 54, 60, 86, 388, 433
    - preventing removal of, 87
- howpublished (BIBTeX database field), 431
- \href (hyperref com.), 310
- \rulefill (space fill com.), 90, 98
- \hslash ( $\hbar$  math sym.), 498
- \hspace (spacing com.), **86**, 126
- \hspace\* (spacing com.), 40, 53, 87–88
- HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol), 526
- \Huge (font size com.), **77**, 78, 507
- \huge (font size com.), **77**, 78, 507
- \hyperlink (beamer com.), 331
- hyperlinks, 307
  - in PDF files, **307–311**
    - increasing size of, 310
    - suppressing, 310
    - to bibliographic citations, 308
    - to Web sites, 310–311
  - in presentations, 331–335, 345, 346
  - putting bookmarks in documents, 309
  - to bibliographic citations, 309, 309
  - with hyperref pack., 308, 309, 307–309
- hyperref (pack.), 307–311
  - bookmarks file (out), 309
  - commands
    - \autoref, 308, 308, 310, 311
    - \pageref, 310
    - \ref, 310
    - \urladdr, 310
- \WriteBookmarks, 309
- documentation for, 308
- options, **308**
  - bookmarks=true, 308
  - colorlinks, 308, **308**, 309
  - dvipdf, 307
  - dvipdfm, 307
  - dvipdfmx, 307
  - dvips, 307
  - dvipsone, 307
  - dviwindo, 307
  - hypertex, 307
  - pagebackref, 308, 309, 309
  - pdftex, 307
  - ps2pdf, 307
  - tex4ht, 307
  - textures, 307
  - vtx, 307
- hypertex (opt. of hyperref pack.), 307
- Hypertext Transfer Protocol, *see* HTTP
- hyphen.tex, 65
- hyphenation, **65–68**, 517
  - determined by optional hyphen, 12, 66
  - displaying, 67
  - L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's algorithm, 63, 65
  - of German text, 536
  - of hyphenated words, 11
  - of words with accents, 66
  - preventing, 66–67, 91
  - rules for English, 68
  - specifying, 66
  - tables, 515
- \hyphenation, 65, 66
- hyphens, **11**, **46**, **59**
  - key, 7, 47
  - optional, 12, 66, **66**, 80
  - unbreakable, 67
- \i (i dotless i), **63**, **63**, 506
- \idotsint (∫ … ∫ large math op.), **145**, **156**, 501
- \idx (index aux. file), 465, 466, 467, 470
- \iff (↔ math arrow), 369, 497
- \ignorespacesafterend (spacing com.), 388
- \iiint (∯ ∯ large math op.), **145**, **156**, 501
- \iiint (∯ large math op.), **145**, **156**, 501
- \iint (∬ large math op.), **145**, **156**, 501
- \ilg (MakeIndex log files), 467
- illustrations, 248, **249–250**, **349**
  - commands for, 481
  - double-column, 249
  - Encapsulated PostScript (EPS), 479
  - graphicx (pack.), 238, 249
  - placement of, 87, 251
  - Portable Document Format (PDF), 249, 479

- preparation of, 485  
sample files, 315  
scaling, 250  
with `graphicx` (pack.), 26  
with the `picture` environment, 249
- Illustrator, Adobe, *see under* Adobe Illustrator  
`\Im` ( $\Im$  math sym.), 498  
`\imath` ( $\imath$  math sym.), 498
- iMazing  
     $\text{\LaTeX}$  app for iPad, 541
- `\in` ( $\in$  binary rel.), 493
- `\in` (*TikZ* graphics pack. com.), 356, 361
- `\in` (inch abs. unit), 11, 80, 90, 92, 95, 411
- `\inbibl.tlp1` (sample file), 253
- `\INBOOK` (bibl. entry type), 430, 441
- `\inch` (in abs. unit), 11, 80, 90, 92, 95, 411
- `\include` (inclusion com.), 399, 479, 480  
    and auxiliary files, 518  
    and counters, 408  
    errors with, 480  
    files start on new pages, 480
- `\includegraphics` (`graphics` com.), 250, 315,  
    481  
    file extensions in, 250  
    in presentations, 330
- `\includeonly` (preamble inclusion com.), 408,  
    479, 480
- including  
    files in other files, 391, 399  
    fonts  
        in PDF files, 306  
        in PostScript files, 305  
    graphics in documents, 249–250, 349–364
- `\INCOLLECTION` (bibl. entry type), 430, 437
- incrementing counters, 406
- `\ind` (proc. index files), 465, 466, 467, 488
- `\indent` (indentation com.), 84
- indentation  
    hanging, 84, 129  
    in `multiline` and `multiline*` environments,  
        201  
    in source files, 163  
        of environment bodies, 139  
    of first lines of paragraphs, 84, 301, 411  
    of subformulas, 205  
    of text, 83–84  
        customizing, 88  
        forcing, 84  
        preventing, 84
- `\indentfirst` (pack.), 301
- `\index` (indexing com.), 375, 456, 456, 459–465  
    at signs (@) in, 461, 462  
    defining cross-references in indexes with, 463  
    double quote ("") in, 463  
    encapsulators, 460
- exclamation marks (!) in, 459, 460, 463  
modifiers, 460  
page ranges in, 460  
placement of commands, 464, 487  
spaces in argument of, 467–468  
syntax of, 464  
vertical line () in, 460, 463
- indexes, 299, 458, 455–470  
    appear in back matter, 456  
    auxiliary files (`idx`), 465, 467  
    cross-references in, 463  
    defining, *see indexing*  
    entries  
        sorting, 461–462  
        stored in `idx` files, 465, 467  
    log files (`i1g`), 467  
    main entries, 257, 455, 459  
    multiple, 469  
    placement of, 456, 467  
    processed files (`ind`), 465–467, 488  
    processing, 465–467  
    sample, 458, 456–458  
    simple, 257  
    special characters in, 463  
    subentries, 257, 455, 459  
    subsubentries, 257, 455, 460  
    syntax of, 464  
    typesetting, 465–467  
    using `showidx`, 459  
    vertical space in, 257, 455
- indexing, *see also* `MakeIndex`, 455–470  
    commands for, 257, 375, 455–465, 467  
    CTAN systems for, 527  
    entries  
        main, 257, 455, 459  
        subentries, 257, 455, 459  
        subsubentries, 257, 455, 460  
    environment for, 257, 414, 455, 465  
    page ranges, 460–461  
    placement of commands for, 464  
    processed files (`ind`), 488  
    processed index files (`ind`), 465–467  
    rules for, 467–469  
    typesetting entries in margins, 299  
    with AMS document classes, 456  
        with custom commands, 375
- `\indexname` (redef. name), 381
- `\indexspace` (indexing com.), 455
- `\inf` ( $\inf$  math op.), 153, 287, 500
- information, top matter  
    AMS specific, 269–270  
    AMS subject classifications, 269  
    keywords, 270, 285  
author, 265–269, 292  
    addresses, 266, 284

- current addresses, 267, 271  
 e-mail addresses, 267, 270, 284  
 Internet addresses, 268, 270, 284  
 research support, 268, 270, 284, 292  
 for articles, 263–274  
     author names, 265, 284, 292  
     dedications, 265  
     title, 263, 285, 292  
     translator, 264  
`\infty` (math sym.), 38, 498  
`\initex` ( $\TeX$  program), 515  
 initials  
     periods in, 50–51  
     typographical rules for, 51  
`\injlim` ( $\inj$  lim math op.), 153  
 Inkspace graphics, 27  
 inline  
     fractions, 141  
     math formulas, *see* inline math environments  
     tables, 117  
 inline math environments, 12, 41, 136  
     `\(`` (start math mode), 13, 58, 136  
     `\)`` (end math mode), 13, 58, 136  
     act as special braces, 136, 137  
     and \$, 12, 13, 41, 58, 136, 136  
     display-style binomials in, 141  
     font size of, 186  
     `\math`, 136  
     matrices in, 223–224  
     size of delimiters in, 152  
 INPROCEEDINGS (bibl. entry type), 430, 436–437  
`\input` (inclusion com.), 515  
`\inputenc` (pack.), 535  
`\institute` (`beamer` com.), 314  
`\institution` (`BIBTEX` database field), 431  
 instructions to  $\LaTeX$ , 6, 9, 24, 35, 47, 51, 236, 240, 521  
`\int` ( $\int$  large math op.), 16, 156, 501  
 integrals, 16, 144–145, 287  
 integration of fonts into  $\LaTeX$ , 513, 531  
 interactive mode, 97, 381–383, 521  
`\intercal` ( $\intercal$  math op.), 496  
 intercolumn spacing, 195, 197, 207, 208  
     in aligned math environments, 212, 216  
     in `tabular` environments, 119  
 interline spacing, 41, 152, 231  
     adjusting, 79, 82–83, 88  
 international  $\TeX$  users groups, 525  
 Internet, 268, 310, 423, 526  
     addresses, 268, 311  
     in top matter (`\urladdr` com.), 268, 284, 310  
     and  $\LaTeX$ , 525  
     browsers, 526, 528  
     FTP transfers, 526  
     viewing PDF files in, 306  
 documents in PostScript format, 305  
 finding  $\LaTeX$  and  $\TeX$  related material on, 525  
 finding  $\LaTeX$ - and  $\TeX$ -related material on, 526  
 hyperlinks in PDF documents, 307, 310  
 $\LaTeX$  and  $\TeX$  resources on, 526, 529  
 putting  $\LaTeX$  documents on, 305–311  
 types of sites for downloading files, 526  
 intersentence spaces (`\@.`), 9, 48–51, 510  
     and `\frenchspacing`, 51  
     and `\nonfrenchspacing`, 51  
`\intertext` (text in math com.), 213–215  
 interword space, 9, 48–51, 60, 388, 433  
     and `\frenchspacing`, 51  
     and `\nonfrenchspacing`, 51  
     command (`\_`), 9, 50, 54, 86, 174, 510  
`\intlimits` (opt. of `amsmath` pack.), 287  
 invalid characters, 7, 47  
 invisible boxes, *see* struts  
 invoking  
     custom commands, 370  
     delimited commands, 383  
     proclamations, 35, 109, 112, 330, 388  
`\iota` ( $\iota$  Greek char.), 147, 492  
 iPad  
     the Cloud, 539  
     iTunes file transferring, 544  
     keyboards, 547, 549, 551  
      $\LaTeX$  apps, 541, 540–541, 551  
          $\TeX$  Writer, 540, 550–551  
         Texpad, 550  
     Latex apps/ $\LaTeX$  apps  
         Texpad, 540, 544  
     printers, 543  
     printing apps, 543  
     printing  $\LaTeX$  files, 543  
     the Cloud, 548  
     typesetting source files, 548, 551  
 ISBN (bibl. com.), 431  
`\it` (obs.  $\LaTeX$  2.09 font com.), 79  
 italic correction, 76–77, 510  
     and commas, 76  
     and `\em`, 77  
     and font commands, 75, 77  
     and `\itshape`, 76, 77  
     and periods, 76  
     and `\slshape`, 77  
     suppressing, 76–77  
     with two-letter font commands, 79  
 italics  
     bold math, 184  
     font shape, 10, 19, 51, 72, 74, 75, 78, 107, 420, 506

- in math mode, **183**, *183*, **502**
- math font, **183**
- \item (list item com.), **40–107**, **246**
  - and square brackets, **106**
  - in simple indexes, **257**, **455**
  - optional arguments of, **104**, **106**, **416**, **417**
- \itemindent (length com.), **415**, **416**
- itemize (text list env.), **40**, **102**, **103–104**, **246**
- \Itemname (*hyperref* redef. name), **311**
- \itemsep (length com.), **416**, **420**
- \itshape (font shape com. dec.), **74**, **75**, **78**, **107**,  
        **420**, **506**
  - and italic correction, **76**, **77**
- iTunes file transferring
  - iPad, **544**
- \j (j dotless j), **63**, **63**, **506**
- Jackowski, Bogusław, **514**
- Java, with *BIBTeX*, **452**
- JavaScript, **306**
- JBibtexManager bibl. manager, **452**
- Jeffrey, Alan, **513**
- Jensen, Frank, **410**
- \jmath ( $\gamma$  math sym.), **498**
- \Join ( $\bowtie$  binary rel.), **493**
- Jones, David M., **453**, **514**
- journal (*BIBTeX* database field), **431**
- Jr. in bibliographic entries, **432**
- justification of text
  - right, **10**, **51**
- \k (ogonek Eur. accent), **509**
- \kappa ( $\kappa$  Greek char.), **147**, **492**
- \ker (ker math op.), **153**, **500**
- Kern, Uwe, **313**, **336**, **337**, **559**
- kerning, **516**, **517**
- key (*BIBTeX* database field), **431**
- keyboard, **7–48**, **535**
- keyboards for iPad, **547**, **549**, **551**
- keys, **12**
  - alphanumeric, **7**
  - Enter, *see* Return key
  - Esc (escape), **47**, **369**
  - letter, **46**, **7–46**
  - math symbol, **47**
  - math typing, **12**
  - modifier, **46**, **47**
  - number, **46**
  - prohibited, **7**, **47**
  - Return, **7**, **9**, **47**
  - space bar, **7**, **9**, **47**, **313**, **321**
  - special, **7**, **12**, **47**, **60**
  - Tab, **7**, **9**, **47**
- keys, sorting (in \index commands), **461–462**
- case sensitivity of, **468**
- \keywords (top matter com.), **285**
  - rules for using, **270**
- \keywords (bibl. com.), **431**
- \keywordsname (redef. name), **381**
- \kill (tabbing com.), **125**, **126**
- Knuth, Donald E., xxvii, **31**, **511–513**, **515**, **555**,  
        **559**
- koi8-u (font encoding), **536**
- L, slashed ( $\mathbb{L}$ ,  $\mathfrak{l}$ ), **64**, **505**
- \label (cross-ref. com.), **19**, **22**, **37**, **70**, **139**,  
        **203**, **219**, **240**, **243**, **247**, **316**
  - and simple indexes, **257**
  - arguments of, **245**
  - assigning counters to, **409**
  - in *table* environments, **27**, **248**
  - placement of commands, **487**
  - rules for, **245**
  - showing in margin, **246**, **301**
  - with \\\, **203**
- labels
  - for \bibitem commands, **253**
  - for bibliographic items, **105**
  - for equations, **19**, **244**
  - for groups of equations, **191**
  - in list environments, **105**, **105**
  - of items in a *list* environment, **415**, **416**,  
            **417**
  - setting with \label, **19**, **243**
  - TikZ (graphics pack.), **352**
  - TikZ graphics, **357**
- \labelsep (length com.), **415**, **416**
- \labelwidth (length com.), **415**, **416**
- \Lambda (math Greek char.), **148**, **492**
- \lambda (math Greek char.), **147**, **492**
- Lampert, Leslie, xxvii, **411**, **512**, **513**, **516**, **554**,  
        **559**
- \land ( $\wedge$  math op.), **496**
- landscape (doc. class opt.), **295**
- \langle (math delimiter), **149**, **150**, **499**
- language (*BIBTeX* database field), **431**
- \LARGE (font size com.), **77**, **78**, **507**
- \Large (font size com.), **77**, **78**, **78**, **507**
- large
  - math delimiters
    - in *array* subsidiary math environment,  
                **301**
  - operators, **16**, **18**, **144**, **156**, **155–157**, **501**
    - limits of, **155**, **287**
    - sizing of math delimiters with, **151**
    - symbols, **101**, **215–217**
- \large (font size com.), **77**, **78**, **507**
- \larger (font size com.), **78**
- $\mathbb{L}\mathrm{T}\mathrm{E}\mathrm{X}$ , **31**, **511**

- and the Internet, 525  
 apps for iPad, 540  
 counters, 407  
 customizing, 367–424  
 distribution, 62, 69, **298–302, 515, 516**, 519, 520, 527  
 components of, 291–296  
 directories, 246, **298–299**, 300, 528, 535  
 on CTAN, 528  
 document classes, *see under* document classes  
 document structure, 235–260, 473  
 documentation for, 299  
 packages, 300  
 documents, 235–260  
 printing and viewing, 517  
 putting on the Internet, 305–311  
 files created by, 518–520  
 font substitution, 78, 306, 485  
 formats, 516  
 history of, 511–515  
 implementations, 6, 32, 177, 299, 306, 525  
 technical support for, 528  
 UNIX, 467  
 inner workings of, 515–520  
 iPad apps, **541**, 540–541  
 layers of, 515–516  
 localization of, 63, 535–536  
 numbers stored by, 63–65  
 overview of, 511–523  
 printing files from iPad, 543  
 release dates of, 69, 239, 519  
 resources on the Internet, 529  
 source files, *see under* source files  
 spacing in text, 9  
 structure of, 31–32  
 updates to, 178, 519  
 using, **32, 33**  
 versions of, 519–520  
 specifying, in documents, 69, 238, 391, 519  
 writing books with, 471–489
- L***A***T***E***X** apps  
 for iPad, 551  
 $\backslash$ *LaTeX* (*L**A**T**E**X* logo com.), 6, 63  
*L**A**T**E**X* 2.09, 391, 512–514  
 font names, 301  
 two-letter font commands, 78, **79**
- L**A**T**E**X* 2<sub>ε</sub>, *see L**A**T**E**X*
- l***a***t***e***x**.**1***t***x**, **299**
- L**A**T**E**X* 3, **513**, 514, 528  
 $\backslash$ *LaTeXe* (*L**A**T**E**X* 2<sub>ε</sub> logo com.), 63  
 $\backslash$ *LaTeXe* (*L**A**T**E**Xe* logo com.), 514  
*latexsym* (pack.), 164, 237, 282, 288, 299  
 layers, of *L**A**T**E**X* and *T**E**X*, 515–516  
 layout  
 of a list, 415  
 of Computer Modern typewriter font, 61, 62  
 of pages, 31, **258–260**, 301  
 $\backslash$ *layout* (page-layout diagram com.), 258  
*layout* (pack.), 258, 301  
 $\backslash$ *l**b**r**a**c**e* ({ math delimiter), 41, **149, 499**  
 $\backslash$ *l**b**r**a**k**c* ([ math delimiter), 149, 499  
 $\backslash$ *l**c**e**i**l* ([ math delimiter), 149, 499  
 $\backslash$ *l**d**o**t**s* (...)  
 in math, 41, 144, 170  
 in text, **16**  
 $\backslash$ *l**e* (≤ binary rel.), 493  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**a**d**s**t**o* (↔ math arrow), 497  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t* (math delim.), 41, **149–150**, 152, 168, 224  
 blank, 150, 166  
 must be balanced, 150, 204  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t* (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 357, 362  
 left double quote (“)  
 text symbol, 59, 64, 508  
 typing, 9  
 left single quote (‘)  
 key, 7, 9, 46, **59**  
 text symbol, **59, 509**  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t* (( math delimiter), 15–17, 41, 147, 149, 150, 168, 204, 223  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t*. (blank math delim.), 150, 166  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**<* (< math delimiter), **150**  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t*[ ([ math delimiter), 15, 147, 165  
 $\backslash$ *L**e**f**t**arrow* (← math arrow), 497  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**arrow* (← math arrow), 368, 378, 497  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**arrowtail* (← math arrow), 497  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**harpoondown* (← math arrow), 497  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**harpoonup* (← math arrow), 497  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**leftarrows* (⇐ math arrow), 497  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**margin* (length com.), 415, **416**, 419  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**rightarrow* (→ math arrow), 497  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**rightarrowtail* (→ math arrow), 497  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**tharpoondown* (→ math arrow), 497  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**tharpoonup* (→ math arrow), 497  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**leftleftarrows* (⊐ math arrow), 497  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**leftmargin* (length com.), 415, **416**, 419  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**rightarrow* (↔ math arrow), 497  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**rightarrows* (⊏ math arrow), 497  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**rightharpoons* (⊐ math arrow), 497  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**rightsquigarrow* (↔ math arrow), 497  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**root* (root-adjustment com.), 145, 146  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t**threetimes* (× math op.), 496  
 $\backslash$ *l**e**f**t*| (| math delimiter), 17, 150, 164, 173, 175  
 legacy  
 document classes, 102, 237, 242, 253, 262, 290, 293, **291–302**, 516  
 documents, 307  
 environments, 107, 127–129, 414  
 quotation, 128  
 quote, 127  
 verse, 128  
*legacy-article.tex* (sample file), 292, 293  
*legalpaper* (doc. class opt.), 69, 286, 294  
 Lehman, Philipp, 453

- length commands, 92, 93, 260, 406, **410–414**
  - and boxes, 413
  - arithmetic with, 301, 412
  - `\baselineskip`, 79, 85
  - `\baselinestretch`, 83
  - defining new, 411
  - `\depth`, 92, **93**, 96
  - `\fboxrule`, 94
  - `\fboxsep`, 94
  - `\hangafter`, 84
  - `\hangindent`, **84**
  - `\height`, 92, **93**, 96
  - in list environments, 414–416
  - `\itemindent`, **415**, 416
  - `\itemsep`, 416, 420
  - `\labelsep`, **415**, 416
  - `\labelwidth`, **415**, 416
  - `\leftmargin`, **415**, **416**, 419
  - `\listparindent`, **415**, 416, **422**
  - `\marginparpush`, 411
  - `\marginparwidth`, 97
  - `\medskipamount`, 382, **414**
  - `\multilinegap`, 201
  - `\oddsidemargin`, 260
  - `\overfullrule`, 80
  - `\parindent`, **411**, 422
  - `\parsep`, **415**, **416**, 420, 422
  - `\parskip`, **411**, **415**, 416, 422, 483
  - `\partopsep`, 416
  - `\rightmargin`, **415**, **416**, 419
  - setting, 84, 97, **412–413**
  - `\textwidth`, 260, 406, **411**
  - `\topsep`, **415**, **416**
  - `\totalheight`, 92, **93**, 94, 96
  - `\width`, 92, **93**, 96
- lengths, rubber, *see* rubber lengths
- `\leq` ( $\leq$  binary rel.), 493
- `\leqno` (doc. class opt.), **286**, 295
- `\leqq` ( $\leqq$  binary rel.), 494
- `\leqslant` ( $\leqslant$  binary rel.), 494
- less than ( $<$ )
  - as binary relation, 493
  - text symbol, 64, 508
- `\lessapprox` ( $\lessapprox$  binary rel.), 494
- `\lessdot` ( $\lessdot$  binary rel.), 494
- `\lesseqtr` ( $\lesseqtr$  binary rel.), 494
- `\lesseqgtr` ( $\lesseqgtr$  binary rel.), 494
- `\lessgtr` ( $\lessgtr$  binary rel.), 494
- `\lessim` ( $\lessim$  binary rel.), 494
- `\letter` (doc. class), 296–298, 516
- `\letter` (letter env.), 296–298
  - argument of, 297
  - breaking lines in, 297
  - errors with, 297
- letter keys, **46**, 7–46
- `\letter.tex` (sample file), 296–298
- `\letterpaper` (doc. class opt.), 286, 294
- letters
  - counter style, 408
  - Greek, **147**, **148**, 165, 393–396, **492**
  - Hebrew, **147**, 491
- Levy, Silvio, 555, 560
- `\lfloor` (lfloor math delimiter), **149**, 499
- `\lg` (lg math op.), **153**, 500
- `\lhd` ( $\lhd$  math op.), 496
- ligatures, **62**
  - suppressing, **62**, 165, 369
- `\lim` (lim math op.), **153**, 287, 500
- `\liminf` (lim inf math op.), **153**, 500
- limits
  - as subscripts, **16**, **144**, 153–155, 165, 166, 286, 380
  - as superscripts, **16**, **144**, 155, 165, 286
  - large operators with, 16, 18, 144, 155, **155**, **156**, 287, 501
  - multiline, 157
  - operators with, 153, **153**, 287, 500
  - placement of, 287
- `\limits` (limit-control com.), **144**, 155
- `\limsup` (lim sup math op.), **153**, 500
- line boxes, *see under* boxes
- line ending characters, 47–49, 52, 68, 86
  - commenting out, 68, 69, 464
  - translation of, 47
- line numbers, in error messages, 137, 138
- line segments, TikZ graphics, 354
- `\line width` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 351, 353, 360
- `\linebreak` (line breaking com.), 486, 487
- `\linebreak` (line-breaking com.), **81**, 82
  - optional arguments of, 83
- lines
  - adding to
    - lists of figures and tables, 478
    - tables of contents, 475–476, 489
  - blank
    - in bibliographies, 309
    - in displayed math environments, 37, 137, 140, 203
    - in inline math environments, 137
    - in text environments, 41, 102
    - in top matter commands, 263
    - in `\verbatim` environments, 130
    - terminating paragraphs with, 9, 41, **48**, 83, 102, 128, 309
  - breaking, **81**
    - preventing, 83
    - with `\backslash`, 17, 21, 22, 24, 82, 108, 119, 125, 126, 129, 157, 199, 200, 203, 204, 215, 219, 231, 263–267, 285, 292, 297, 345

- distance between, 88
  - adjusting, 98
- filling with space or dots, **90–91**, 98, 110, 169, 221, 224, 422
  - separating
    - with  $\backslash\backslash$ , 17, 21, 22, 24, 82, 108, 119, 125, 126, 129, 157, 199, 200, 203, 204, 215, 219, 231, 263–267, 285, 292, 297, 345
    - with  $\backslash\linebreak$ , **81**, 82, 486, 487
  - stretchable, 160
  - terminating in TikZ, 351
  - too wide warnings, 11
  - wrapping, 68
- lines (rules)
  - horizontal
    - filling lines with, 90, 98
    - in **tabular** environments, 119, 121
  - intersecting in tables, 124, **301**
  - vertical
    - in CD environments, 229
    - in **tabular** environments, 119
- links, hyper, *see* hyperlinks
- list** (list text env.), 40, 102, 414, **415**, **416–422**
  - arguments of, 417
  - length commands in, 414–416
  - using counters with, 418
- list text environments, 40, **102–107**
  - description**, **104**
  - enumerate**, **102**, 107
  - in proclamations, 110
  - itemize**, 40, **103**
  - list**, 40, 102
  - mixing, 106
  - nesting, 105
  - rules for, 104
  - trivlist**, 422
- \listfigurename** (redef. name), 380, 381
- \listfiles** (file list com.), 392, 519, **520**
  - listing files used by a document, 392, 520
- \listings** (pack.), 127
- \listoffigures** (front matter com.), **478**, 519
- \listoftables** (front matter com.), **477**, 519
- \listparindent** (length com.), 415, 416, **422**
- lists
  - cross-referencing items in, 103, 107
  - custom
    - and counters, 418
    - defining, 414–422
  - environments for, *see* list text environments,
    - see* list text environments
  - in presentations, 327–329
  - of figures, 477–478
    - adding a line to, 478
    - auxiliary file (**lof**), **478**, 488, **519**
    - fragile commands in, 58
- of tables, 118, **477–478**
  - adding a line to, 478
  - auxiliary file (**lot**), **477**, 488, **519**
  - fragile commands in, 58
- \listtablename** (redef. name), 381
- \l** (<< binary rel.), 493
- \llcorner** (\_ math delimiter), **149**, 499
- \leftarrow** ( $\Leftarrow$  math arrow), 497
- \lll** (<<< binary rel.), 494
- \ln** (ln math op.), **153**, 500
- \lnapprox** ( $\not\approx$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \lneq** ( $\not\leq$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \lneqq** ( $\not\leqslant$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \lnot** ( $\neg$  math sym.), 498
- \lnsim** ( $\not\lesssim$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- local commands, *see under* scope
- localization, of **LATEX**, 535–536
- locating errors, 71
- location of **BIBTEX** database and style files, 445
- lof** (list of figures file), **478**, **478**, 488, **519**
- \log** (log math op.), **153**, 500
- log** (**LATEX** log file), 6, 20, **34**, 68, 80, 383, 391, **477**, **518**, 520
  - error and warning messages recorded in, 11, 80
- log files
  - for **BIBTEX**, *see* **blg**
  - for indexes, *see* **ilg**
  - for **LATEX**, *see* **log**
- log-like* functions, *see* operators
- logical
  - design, 35, 235
  - of books, 481–483
  - units, 8, 24–243, 251, 257, 274, 292, 296–298, 414, 443, 455, 465, **472–473**, 512, 522
    - hierarchy of, 240, 241
    - numbering of, **410**, **472**
    - numbering of proclamations within, 112
- logos, 63–65
- long commands, 57
- \Longleftarrow** ( $\Longleftarrow$  math arrow), 497
- \longleftarrow** ( $\longleftarrow$  math arrow), 497
- \Longleftrightarrow** ( $\Longleftrightarrow$  math arrow), 497
- \longleftrightarrow** ( $\longleftrightarrow$  math arrow), 497
- \longmapsto** ( $\longmapsto$  math arrow), 497
- \Longrightarrow** ( $\Longrightarrow$  math arrow), 497
- \longrightarrow** ( $\longrightarrow$  math arrow), 497
- \longtable** (pack.), 301
- \looparrowleft** ( $\looparrowleft$  math arrow), 497
- \looparrowright** ( $\looparrowright$  math arrow), 497
- \lor** ( $\vee$  math op.), 496
- lot** (list of tables files), **477**, 488, **519**
- Louisville.tex** (sample file), 27
- low-level font commands, 79

- lowercase counter styles  
     letters (`\alph`), 408  
     roman numerals (`\roman`), 107, 408
- lowline (\_ text symbol), 61, 64, 508
- `\lozenge` ( $\diamond$  math sym.), 498
- `\lrcorner` ( $\lrcorner$  math delimiter), 149, 499
- `\Lsh` ( $\Lsh$  math arrow), 497
- `\ltimes` ( $\ltimes$  math op.), 496
- Lucida Bright, 531, 534
- `lucidabr` (pack.), 534
- `lucidabr.dtx` (PSNFSS distr. file), 534
- `lucidabr.fdd` (PSNFSS distr. file), 534
- `lucidabr.ins` (PSNFSS distr. file), 534
- `lucidabr.sty` (PSNFSS distr. file), 534
- `lucidabr.yy` (PSNFSS distr. file), 534
- `\lVert` ( $\lVert$  math delimiter), 150
- `\lvert` ( $\lvert$  math delimiter), 150
- `\lvertneqq` ( $\lvertneqq$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- LY1 (pack. opt.), 533, 534
- Mac, *see* Macintosh
- Macintosh, 5, 452, 481, 512, 539  
     FTP clients, 526
- macron (‐ text accent), 63, 506
- macros, *see* commands and custom commands
- MacTeX (Windows L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X front end), 5
- main entries, in indexes, 257, 455, 456, 459, 462, 463
- main matter, 237, 239–251, 473
- `\mainmatter` (struct. com.), 473
- `\makebox` (box com.), 91, 91, 92–94, 96, 98
- `makerglos` (pack.), 470
- `\makeglossary` (preamble glossary com.), 470, 518
- `makeidx` (pack.), 299, 456, 480
- `MakeIndex`, 61, 258, 455–470, 519  
     and font commands, 75
- `\maketitle` (title-page com.), 236, 237, 474  
     and abstracts, 239, 274, 294  
     and page styles, 260
- MANUAL (bibl. entry type), 430, 442
- manuals, in BIBTeX database files, 442
- manuscripts  
     in BIBTeX database files, 441–442  
     preparing for publication, 471
- `\mapsto` ( $\mapsto$  math arrow), 497
- `\mapstochar` ( $\mapstochar$  math arrow), 497
- marginal comments, 96–97, 486  
     in double-sided documents, 97  
     in equations, 96  
     in multiline math environments, 96  
     space between, 411  
     width of paragraph box for, 97
- `\marginpar` (marginal comment com.), 96  
     in double-sided documents, 97
- `\marginparpush` (length com.), 411
- `\marginparwidth` (length com.), 97
- margins, 411, 416  
     of nested lists, 416  
     showing symbolic references in, 246, 301
- `\markboth` (left and right page header com.), 258  
     arguments of, 260
- `\markleft` (left page header com.), 260, 271
- `\markright` (right page header com.), 258
- master document, 479–481
- MASTERSTHESIS (bibl. entry type), 430, 439–440
- math, 6  
     accents, 16, 157–158, 167, 168, 289, 382, 485  
     alphabets, 164–166, 169, 183, 182–184, 289, 396, 502  
     arrows, 160, 171, 228, 497  
         as delimiters, 148, 149, 150  
         stretchable, 160, 229–230  
         vertical, 229  
     binary operations, *see* binary operations  
     binary relations, *see* binary relations  
     characters, 12, 47  
     environments, 136–138  
         aligned, *see under* aligned, *see under* aligned and `\verb` commands, 132  
         blank lines in, 137, 140  
         displayed, *see* displayed math environments,  
             *see* displayed math environments  
         inline, *see* inline math environments  
         multiline, 202–207, 321  
         page breaks in, 230  
         spaces in, 137  
     fonts, 182–184  
         blackboard bold, 165, 184, 396, 502  
         bold, 168, 183, 183, 185, 396, 502  
         bold italic, 183  
         calligraphic, 169, 184, 289, 396, 502  
         Euler Fraktur, 164, 184, 289, 396, 502  
         Euler Script, 289, 396, 502, 502  
         italic, 183, 183, 502  
         roman, 183, 183, 502  
         sans serif, 183, 183, 502  
         size of, 186  
         typewriter, 183, 183, 502  
     mode, *see* math mode  
     multiline, 195–231  
         *Visual Guide to*, 195, 196
- operators, 14, 15, 17, 39, 141, 153, 152–157, 376, 496, 500  
     declaring, 39, 379–380  
     large, 16, 18, 144, 151, 156, 155–157, 287, 501  
     with limits, 16, 18, 144, 153, 153, 155, 156, 287, 500, 501

- subscripts and superscripts, 186  
 symbol alphabets, 184  
     blackboard bold, 184  
     calligraphic, 184  
     Euler Fraktur, 184  
     Greek, 184  
 symbols, *see* math symbols  
 text in, 13, **18**, 66, 83, 91, 138, **146–147**,  
     164, 183, 213–215, 229, 289  
     specifying fonts for, 146  
     typing, 24, 135–193  
**math** (inline math env.), 136  
 math arrows, 160, 171, 228  
     as delimiters, 148, **149**, **150**, 499  
     stretchable, **160**, 229–230  
     vertical, 229  
 math commands, 15, 18, 143, 145, 157, 175, 181,  
     187, 191  
     for alignment of formulas, 202  
 math delimiters, **15–16**, 17, **149**, **147–152**, 164–  
     166, 168, 169, 172, 173, 175, 204, 223,  
     224, 499  
     and large operators, 151  
     arrows, 148  
     balancing, 150, 166, 204  
     blank, 150, 166  
     fixed-size, 150  
     in inline math environments, 152  
     in **smallmatrix** subsidiary math environ-  
         ments, 223, 224  
     large, in **array** subsidiary math environment,  
         301  
     left bracket (`(`), 15, 147, 165  
     limitations of stretching, **151**  
     right bracket (`)`), 15, 147, 165  
     specifying size of, **150**, 168  
     stretchable, 41, 149–150  
     with **matrix** variants, 223  
 math font commands, *see also* font command dec-  
     larations and font commands  
     for bold  
         `\boldsymbol`, 168, 184, **185**, 289, 502  
         `\mathbb`, 165, **184**, 502  
         `\mathbf`, 168, **183**, **183**, **185**, 502  
         `\pmb`, **185–186**, 289  
     for italics  
         `\mathit`, **183**, **183**, 502  
     for series  
         `\mathnormal`, **183**, **183**, 502  
     for shape  
         `\mathcal`, 169, **184**, 502  
         `\mathfrak`, 164, **184**, 289, 502  
         `\mathrm`, **183**, 502  
         `\mathscr`, **289**, 502, 502  
         `\mathsf`, **183**, **183**, 502  
     `\mathhtt`, **183**, **183**, 502  
     for size  
         `\displaystyle`, **186**, 191  
         `\scriptscriptstyle`, **186**, 191  
         `\scriptstyle`, **186**, 191  
         `\textstyle`, **186**, 191  
     for weight  
         `\boldsymbol`, 168, 184, **185**, 289, 502  
         `\mathbf`, 168, **183**, **183**, **185**, 502  
         `\pmb`, **185–186**, 289  
 math mode, 6, **46**, 59, 131, 138, 146, 152, 153,  
     186, 373, 379, 380, 400  
 math symbols, 13, 38, 47, 115, **147–503**  
     alphabets, **184**  
     and delimiters, 16, 148, 150  
     bold, **185–186**, 289, 300  
     building new, 166, **178–182**, 376  
     classification of, **172–173**, 182  
     declaring types of, 182  
     end of proof, 97, 379  
     in text, 369  
     large, 215–217  
     negated, 181–182  
     shorthand commands for, 368  
     side-setting, 181–182  
     sizes of, 186  
     spacing of, 171–176  
     stacking, 41, 178–181  
     STIX, 171–178  
     stretchable, 159–161  
     suppressing, 115, 116  
 math units, *see* mu  
     `\mathbb` (`\mathbb{X}`), 165, **184**, 502  
     `\mathbf` (math font weight com.), 168, **183**, **183**,  
         **185**, 502  
     `\mathbin` (binary-op. com.), 182  
     `\mathcal` ( $\mathcal{X}$ ), 169, **184**, 502  
         and Euler Script, 289  
     *Mathematical Reviews*, 143  
     `\mathfrak` ( $\mathfrak{X}$ ), 164, **184**, 289, 502  
     `\mathit` (math font shape com.), **183**, **183**, 502  
     `\mathnormal` (math font shape com.), **183**, **183**,  
         **502**  
     `\mathrel` (binary-rel. def. com.), 182  
     `\mathring` ( $\dot{x}$  math accent), **158**, 502  
     `\mathrm` (math font shape com.), **183**, **502**  
     `\mathscr` (opt. of `eucal` pack.), **289**, 391, 396,  
         **502**  
     `\mathsf` (math font shape com.), **289**, 502,  
         **502**  
     `\mathstrut` (spacing com.), 98, 187  
     *MathTime*, 533  
         installing, 533  
     `\mathtime` (pack.), 533

`mathtime.dtx` (PSNFSS distr. file), 533  
`mathtime.ins` (PSNFSS distr. file), 533  
`mathtime.sty` (PSNFSS distr. file), 533  
`mathtools` (pack.), 193  
`\mathtt` (math font shape com.), 183, 183, 502  
`\mathversion`, 185  
matrices, 16–17, 220–227  
    in inline math environments, 223–224  
`matrix`(subsid. math env.), 16–17, 196, 198, 220,  
    **220–227**  
    variants, 223  
`\max` (max math op.), 153, 287, 500  
`MaxMatrixCols` (counter), 221  
`\mbox` (box com.), 91  
McLean, Ruari, 555, 559  
McPherson, Kent, 258  
`\mdseries` (font weight com. dec.), 74, 77, 502  
`\measuredangle` ( $\angle$  math sym.), 498  
measurements, of text boxes, 413, 413  
    commands for, 413  
medium (font weight), 73, 74, 77, 506  
`\medskip` (spacing com.), 88  
`\medskipamount` (length com.), 382, 414  
`\medspace` (spacing com.), 174, 503, 510  
messages, 6, 35–39, 521  
    Argument of `\xxx` has  
        an extra }, 130  
    Bad math environment  
        delimiter, 116, 137, 477  
    `\begin{document}` ended by `\end{\xxx}`,  
        71, 130  
    `\begin{split}` not allowed here, 219  
    `\begin{\xxx}` on input line `xx`  
        ended by `\end{\yyy}`, 36, 56  
    Can be used only in preamble, 238  
    Command `\xxx` already defined, 371, 382,  
        386  
    Display math should end with \$\$, 37  
    Double superscript, 142  
    Environment `\xxx` undefined, 386  
    error, *see* messages  
    Extra alignment tag has been  
        changed to `\cr`, 225  
    Extra }, or forgotten `\xxx`, 210  
    File ‘`\xxx`’ not found, 521  
    I was expecting a ‘,’  
        or a ‘)’, 450, 451  
    Illegal character in array arg, 225  
    Illegal unit of measure (pt  
        inserted), 98  
    Incomplete `\iffalse`; all text was  
        ignored after line `xx`, 297  
    Invalid use of `\xxx`, 146  
    line numbers in, 137, 138  
    Misplaced `\xxx`, 119, 215  
Missing `\begin{document}`, 110  
Missing control sequence  
    inserted, 412  
Missing \$ inserted, 37, 38, 131, 137,  
    138, 140, 221  
Missing number, treated  
    as zero, 82, 95  
Missing } inserted, 38, 211  
No counter ‘`\xxx`’ defined, 408  
Paragraph ended before `\xxx`  
    was complete, 36, 99, 109, 225, 378,  
        384, 468  
recorded in log file, 34  
Runaway argument?, 36, 109, 225, 274,  
    384, 468  
Runaway definition?, 37  
showing paragraph breaks in, 83  
Something’s wrong—perhaps  
    a missing `\item`, 104, 254  
`\tag` not allowed here, 203  
Text line contains an invalid  
    character, 37, 48  
Too many }’s, 56, 274  
Undefined control sequence, 36, 54,  
    272, 273, 371  
Underfull `\hbox`, 82, 517  
Use of `\xxx` doesn’t match its  
    definition, 384  
`\verb` command ended by end of line,  
    132  
warning, *see* warning messages  
with BIBTEX, 449–452  
    You’re missing a field name, 449  
Metafont, 527  
metrics, font, *see* font metrics  
`\mho` ( $\mho$  math sym.), 498  
Microsoft  
    typography web page, 534  
    Windows, 452  
`\mid` (| binary rel.), 41, 152, 165, 173, 493  
midpoint (· text sym.), 64, 508  
MiKTEX (Windows LTEX front end), 5  
millimeter (mm abs. unit), 411  
`\min` (min math op.), 153, 287, 500  
minipage (text box env.), 91, 93, 96, 388, 389  
    displaying footnotes in, 96  
minus (−), 7, 14, 47, 59, 141, 172, 175, 176, 183,  
    204, 205  
    as binary operation, 496  
mirrors, of CTAN, 527  
MISC (bibl. entry type), 431, 442  
Mittelbach, Frank, xxxi, 86, 513, 514, 558, 560  
mixing list text environments, 106  
mm (millimeter abs. unit), 411  
`\mod` (mod math op.), 154, 155

- \models ( $\models$  binary rel.), 493
- modes
  - interactive, 97, 381–383, **521**
  - quiet, 521
- typographic
  - math, *see also* inline and displayed
  - math environments, 6, **46**, 59, 131, 138, 146, 152, 153, 186, 373, 379, 380, 400
  - text, 6, **46**, 47, 138, 164, 373, 379, 400
- modifier keys, 46, 47
- modifiers, in \index commands, 460
  - combining, 460
- modifying environments, 385–388
- monospaced fonts, 72, 73
- \month (time com.), 65
- month (BIB<sub>TEX</sub> database field), 431, 442
- Moore, Ross, 230, 558
- movable arguments of commands, 58, 477
- \mp ( $\mp$  math op.), 496
- \mpfootnote (counter), 407
- \rabbrev.bib (BIB<sub>TEX</sub> database file), 442
- \rnumber (bibl. com.), 431
- \mspace (spacing com.), **174**, 174, 503
- \bold (opt. of mathtime pack.), 533
- \mtfonts.fdd (PSNFSS distr. file), 533
- \mu ( $\mu$  Greek char.), **147**, 492
- \mu (math unit, rel.), **174**, **174**, 503
- \multicolumn (pack.), 86, 295, 301
- \multicols (disp. text env.), 86, 513
- \multicolumn (table com.), **122**, 121–123
- multicolumn text
  - in documents, **86**, 301, 513
  - in tables, 121–123
- multiline
  - boxes, 91
  - formulas, **21**–**23**, 41, **195**–**231**
    - Visual Guide* to, **195**, 196
    - aligning, 205
    - splitting, 200–202
  - limits, 157
  - math environments, 321
    - adjusting columns in, 195, 198, **220**–**228**
    - aligning, 195, 198
    - marginal comments in, 96
    - page breaks in, 230–231
    - subscripts and superscripts, 157
    - table entries, 120, 122
  - \multimap ( $\rightsquigarrow$  math arrow), 497
  - multipage tables, 301
  - multiple
    - arguments
      - in custom commands, 374, 376
    - authors
      - in bibliographies, 432
      - in documents, 270–271, 292
- bibliographies in a document, 257
- captions, 248
- citations, 256
- documents, cross-referencing among, 301
- files, documents composed of, 479–481
- indexes, 469
- spaces, 14, 48, 55
- tables of contents, 476
- multiplication, 14, 141, 144
- \multline (disp. math env.), **196**, 198, **200**–**202**
  - indentation of lines in, 201
  - rules for, 200
- \multline\* (disp. math env.), 201–202
  - indentation of lines in, 201
- \multlinegap (length com.), 201
- \myams.tpl, 282–285
- \myheadings (page style), 258
- n*-th root, **18**, **145**
- \nabla ( $\nabla$  math sym.), 498
- \namelimits (opt. of amsmath pack.), **287**
- names
  - base (of files), 518
  - for abstracts, 239
  - for proclamations, 109, 112
  - of authors
    - in articles, 265, 284, 292
    - in bibliographies, 432
    - in running heads, 265
  - of commands, 52, 53, 391
  - of counters, 112
  - of files
    - with \graphicspath command, 481
  - of fonts
    - L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09, 301
    - PSNFSS (Berry scheme), 532
    - redefinable, 257, 310, 311, 367, **380**–**381**, 535
  - tagging equations with, 20, **189**–**191**, 199, 201, 203, 206, 217, 219
- \natural ( $\natural$  math sym.), 498
- \ncong ( $\not\equiv$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \ne ( $\neq$  neg. binary rel.), 181, **495**
- \nearrow ( $\nearrow$  math arrow), 497
- \NeedsTeXFormat (preamble com.), 69, **238**, 391, 519
- \neg ( $\neg$  math sym.), 498
- negated math symbols, **181**–**182**, 495
- \negmedspace (spacing com.), **174**, 503, 510
- \negthickspace (spacing com.), **174**, 503, 510
- \negthinspace (spacing com.), **166**, **174**, **174**, 503, 510
- \neq ( $\neq$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- nesting
  - of comment environments, 70

- of list text environments, 105
- New Font Selection Scheme, *see* NFSS and PSNFSS
- \newcommand (custom com.), 39, 58, **368–385**
  - defining arguments with, 374
  - name already in use, 381
  - optional arguments, 378
- \newcommand\* (custom com.), 377
- \newcounter (custom counter com.), 407, 411
  - optional argument of, **407**
- \newenvironment (custom env.), 385–388
- \newenvironment\* (custom env.), 389
- \newlabel (aux. file com.), 34, 518
- newlattice** (pack.), 238, 391, 392
- newlattice.sty** (sample file), 299, 384, 388, **390–400**, 400
  - \newlength (length-command def. com.), 411
  - \newline (line breaking com.), *see also* \\, 81
  - \newline (line-breaking com.), **81, 83**
  - \newpage (page breaking com.), **84, 85**, 251
  - \newtheorem (procl. com.), **109**, 111, 113, 115, 282, 314, 410
    - optional arguments of, 111, 112
    - syntax of, 112
  - \newtheorem\* (procl. com.), **113**, 387
  - \newtheoremstyle (procl. com.), 115
  - \nexists ( $\nexists$  math sym.), 498
- NFSS (New Font Selection Scheme), **513**, 514
- nfssfont** (pack.), 299
- nfssfont.tex** (L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X distr. file), 62, 299
- \NG (Eng Eur. char.), 509
- \ng (eng Eur. char.), 509
- \ngeq ( $\geq$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \ngeqq ( $\geq\geq$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \ngeqslant ( $\geq\swarrow$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \ngtr ( $\geq\searrow$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \ni ( $\ni$  binary rel.), 493
- \nLeftarrow ( $\not\Leftarrow$  math arrow), 497
- \nleftrarrow ( $\not\leftarrow$  math arrow), 497
- \nLeftrightarrow ( $\not\Leftrightarrow$  math arrow), 497
- \nleftrightarrow ( $\not\leftrightarrow$  math arrow), 497
- \nleq ( $\not\leq$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \nleqq ( $\not\leq\leq$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \nleqslant ( $\not\leq\swarrow$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \nless ( $\not\lessdot$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \nmid ( $\not\mid$  neg. binary rel.), 181, 495
- noamsfonts (doc. class opt.), 288
- \nobreakdash (hyph. prev. com.), 67
- \nobreakspace (spacing com.), 60
- \nocite (bibl. com.), **445**
- \nocite\* (bibl. com.), 445
- \node (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 357
- \nofiles (preamble com.), 488
  - and auxiliary files, 488, 518
- \noindent (indentation-suppression com.), **84**, 486
- nointlimits (opt. of amsmath pack.), 287
- \nolimits (limit-control com.), **144, 154**, 155, 166
- \nolinebreak (linebreak-suppression com.), 83
- \nomath (doc. class opt.), 288
- nonamelimits (opt. of amsmath pack.), 287
- nonbreakable spaces (~ tie), **9, 47, 50, 59, 60, 83, 510**
  - absorb spaces, 60
  - in BIB<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> databases, 433
    - with cross-references, 246
- \nonfrenchspacing (spacing com.), 51
- \nopagebreak (page break suppression com.), 85
- normal
  - document font family, 73, 74
  - font shape
    - command declarations for, **74, 74, 107, 506, 533**
    - commands for, **74, 74, 506, 533**
    - math commands for, **146, 183, 183, 502**
  - \normalfont (font shape com. dec.), **74, 74, 107, 146, 506, 533**
  - \normalsize (font size com.), **77, 78, 507**
- \nosumlimits (opt. of amsmath pack.), **287**
- \not (math com.), **181**
- \notag, 22, 199, 201, **203**, 206, 219
- notation (text env.), 315
- \notcite (opt. of showkeys pack.), 246
- \note (beamer doc. class opt.), 342
- \note (beamer com.), 342
- \note (BIB<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> database field), 431
- notes, in presentations, 342, 343
- NoticesV.pdf (sample file), 540
- NoticesVI.pdf (sample file), 540
- \notin ( $\not\in$  neg. binary rel.), **181, 495**
- \notitlepage (doc. class opt.), **287, 295, 474**
- Nowacki, Janusz M., 514
- \nparallel ( $\not\parallel$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \nprec ( $\not\prec$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \npreceq ( $\not\preceq$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \nrightarrow ( $\not\rightarrow$  math arrow), 497
- \nrightarrowarrow ( $\not\rightarrow\rightarrow$  math arrow), 497
- \nshortmid ( $\not\mid$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \nshortparallel ( $\not\parallel$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \nsim ( $\sim$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \nsubseteqq ( $\not\subseteq$  neg. binary rel.), 165, 495
- \nsubseteqq ( $\not\subseteq\subseteq$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \nsucc ( $\not\succ$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \nsuccseq ( $\not\preceq$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \nsupseteqq ( $\not\supseteq$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \nsupseteqq ( $\not\supseteq\subseteq$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \ntriangleleft ( $\not\triangleleft$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \ntrianglelefteqq ( $\not\trianglelefteq$  neg. binary rel.), 495

- \ntriangleleft ( $\not\triangleright$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \ntrianglelefteq ( $\not\models$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \nu (ν Greek char.), 147, 492
- number** (BIBTEX database field), 430, 431
- numbered lists, *see* **enumerate**
- numbering
  - automatic, 19, 21, 34, 103, 109, 219, 240
  - of appendices, 243, 473
  - of equations, 18–20, 40, 139–140, 189, 199, 201, 203
  - groups, 205–207
  - in chapters of books, 473
  - in multiline math environments, 203
  - is relative, 189, 190
  - of subsidiary math environments, 218, 219
  - suppressing, 22, 140, 189, 199, 201, 203, 206, 219
  - variations, 190, 206
  - within sections, 19, 140, 238
  - within **split** subsid. math align. env., 217–219
  - of figures, 248
  - of pages, style of, 409
  - of proclamations, 109, 111–112
    - consecutively, 111–112
    - suppressing, 113, 114, 387
    - within sections, 111
  - of structural units, 408, 472, 522
    - controlling, 410
    - in books, 472
    - sections, 240
    - suppressing, 241, 473
  - of tables, 248
  - renumbering, 19, 34, 522
  - with counters, 406–414
    - resetting, 407, 409
- \numberline (toc file com.), 477
- numbers
  - counter styles for, 107, 408, 408–409, 418
  - for equations, placement of, 286, 295
  - for proclamations, position of, 115
  - in bibliographic fields, 430
  - in lists, 103
  - keys, 46
  - line
    - in error messages, 137, 138
    - in warning messages, 11
- page
  - referencing, 247
  - style of, 409
- ranges, 11, 59, 64
  - in BIBTEX databases, 430, 433
  - in index entries, 460
- real, in length commands, 410
- stored by LATEX, 63–65
- stored in
  - counters, 406
  - registers, 382
  - version, 519
- \numberwithin, 19, 140, 238, 472
- numeric counter style (\arabic), 408, 408, 418
- \nVDash ( $\nVdash$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- \nwarrow ( $\nwarrow$  math arrow), 497
- O’Sean, Arlene Ann, 205, 555, 560
- O, slashed ( $\mathcal{O}$ ,  $\emptyset$ ), 64, 505
- Oberdiek, Heiko, 307
- obtaining
  - files from the Internet, 525–528
  - PostScript fonts, 534
  - sample files for this book, 5, 528
  - the AMS packages and AMSFonts, 528
- octothorp (#), 61, 64, 508
- \oddsidemargin (length com.), 260
- \odot ( $\odot$  math op.), 496
- \OE ethel (Œ), 64, 505
- \oe ethel (œ), 64, 505
- ogonek (Eur. accent), 509
- \oint ( $\oint$  large math op.), 145, 156, 501
- old-style digits, 46
- \oldstylenums (old-style digits com.), 46
- \Omega (Ω Greek char.), 148, 492
- \omega (ω Greek char.), 147, 492
- \ominus ( $\ominus$  math op.), 496
- \onecolumn (doc. class opt.), 287, 295
- \onecolumn (single-column com.), 86
- \oneside (doc. class opt.), 287, 295, 474
- \only (beamer com.), 321–323, 325–327, 331
- \onslide (beamer com.), 321, 323, 325–327, 330, 331
- \openany (doc. class opt.), 474
- \openbib (doc. class opt.), 296, 296
- \openright (doc. class opt.), 474
- operations
  - arithmetic, 14–15, 141–143
  - binary, *see* binary operations
- operators, math, 14, 15, 17, 39, 141, 153, 156, 152–157, 376, 496, 500
  - declaring, 39, 379–380
  - large, 16, 18, 144, 151, 156, 155–157, 287, 501
  - sizing of math delimiters with, 151
  - with limits, 16, 18, 144, 153, 153, 155, 156, 287, 500, 501
  - defining, 182, 183, 380
- without limits
  - defining, 182, 183, 186, 238, 289, 379

- \oplus ( $\oplus$  math op.), 496
- optional
  - arguments, 55, 83, 85, 97–99, 109, 145, 146, 160, 222, 231, 238
  - multiple, 53, 54
  - of  $\backslash$ , **81, 83**, 231
  - of commands, 104, 106, 107, 111, 187, 188, 256, 266–269, 339, 407, 409, 416, 417, 422, 478
  - of custom commands, 378
  - of custom environments, 385, 387, 389
  - of environments, 109, 112, 116, 119, 217, 231, 250, 251, 389, 488
  - of sectioning commands, 241, 475
  - of structural commands, 243, 472
  - of TikZ commands, 350
  - of top matter commands, 263–271, 319
  - use square brackets ([ ]), 18, **53–54**, 107, 116, 119, 274
  - bibliographic fields, 431, 434–442
  - hyphens, 12, 66, **66**, 80
- options
  - of packages, *see also* package options
- organization (BIBTeX database field), 431, 437
- organization of files, 479–481
- orientation of pages, document class options for, 295
- orthogonality of font commands, **78–79**
- \oslash ( $\oslash$  math op.), 496
- OT1 font encoding, 532
- \otimes ( $\otimes$  math op.), 496
- out (hyperref bookmarks file), 309
- out (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 356, 361
- \overbrace (horizontal brace com.), **159**, 167
  - with a superscript, 159
- overdot (‘ text accent), **63**, 506
- \overfullrule (length com.), 80
- overlapping braces, 56
- overlays, *see also under* presentations
  - commands for, 325
  - layering, 321
- \overleftarrow ( $\overleftarrow{x}$  math arrow), 160
- \overleftrightarrow ( $\overleftrightarrow{x}$  math arrow), 160
- \overline ( $\overline{x}$  math line sym.), 158, **160**, 168
- overprint (beamer env.), 347
- \overrightarrow ( $\overrightarrow{x}$  math arrow), 160
- \overset (symbol-building com.), 166, **178**, 376
  - creating binary operations and relations with, 180
- \owns ( $\ni$  binary rel.), 493
- \P (¶ pilcrow or paragraph)
  - math symbol, 498
  - text symbol, 64, 508
- package options, 19, *see also* specific packages, 237, 246, 286–287, 289, 307–309, 391, 502, 533, 534, 536
  - are passed down from document classes, 238
  - handled electively, 301
  - preventing loading of, 288
- packages, 32, 237, 299, 512, 514
  - accents, 158
  - afterpage, 300
  - alltt, 131, 299, 520
  - amsbsy, 289, 290
  - amscd, 228–230, 289
  - amsfonts, **289–290**
  - amsgen, 289, 290
  - amsidx, 290
  - amsmath, 32, 220, 286–287, **288**, 289, 290, 411, 514, 520
  - amsopn, 289, 290
  - amssymb, 164, 282, 288, 289, 379
  - amstext, 289, 290
  - amsthm, 32, 290
  - amsxtra, 157, 158, 288, 289
  - apalike, 443
  - array, 300
    - automatic loading of, 336, 516
  - babel, 300, 535–536
  - backref, 308, 309
  - biblatex, 453
  - bm, 300
  - booktabs, 124
  - calc, 301, 410, 413
  - commands in, 391
  - cyrillic, 300
  - dates of, 520
  - dcolumn, 120, 301
  - delarray, 301
  - distribution, AMS, 261, **288–290**, 313, 385, 424, 442, 443, 511
  - documentation for, 97, 251, 300, 302, 346, 385, 533, 534
  - enumerate, 107, 301, 387, 391
  - eucal, 289, 290, 391, 502
    - options, **289**, 396, 502
  - eufrak, 289
  - exscale, 289, 299
  - fancyhdr, 260, 525, 528
  - fileerr, 301
  - fontenc, **533**, 535, 536
  - fontsmpl, 301
  - ftnright, 301
  - geometry, 41, 260
  - graphics, 300
  - graphicx, 26, 176, 238, 249–250, 288, 513
  - hhline, 124, 301
  - hyperref, 307–311

- in required directory, 300
- in tools directory, 300–302
- in unpacked directory, 299
- `indentfirst`, 301
- `inputenc`, 535
- interdependencies of, 261
- `latexsym`, 164, 237, 282, 288, 299
- `layout`, 258, 301
- `listings`, 127
- loading with `\usepackage`, 54, 177, 237
  - multiple, 238
- `longtable`, 301
- `lucidabr`, 534
- `makeglos`, 470
- `makeidx`, 299, **456**, 480
- `mathtime`, 533
- `mathtools`, 193
- `multicol`, 86, 295, 301
- `newlattice`, 238, 391, 392
- `nfssfont`, 299
- obtaining the AMS packages and AMSFonts, 528
- options, *see* package options, *see* package options
- `paralist`, 107
- `program`, 127
- `psnfss`, 300
- `rawfonts`, 301
- `setspace`, 83
- `showidx`, 299, 459
- `showkeys`, 246, 301
- `somedefs`, 301
- source files, 238, **298**, 443, 528
- `stix`, 177
- `tabularx`, 301
- `theorem`, 301
- `TikZ`, 27, 249, 350
- `times`, 532
- `tools`, 300
- `trace`, 301
- updates to AMSFonts and `amsmath`, 520
- `upref`, 288, 289
- `varioref`, 246, 301
- `verbatim`, 70, 71, 130, 131, 301, 391
- versions of, 514, 515, 519–520
- `xcolor`, 313, 336
- `xr`, 246, 301
  - `xspace`, 302, 372–373
  - `xy-pic`, 230
- `page` (counter), 406, **407**
- `pagebackref` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 308
- `\pagebreak` (page breaking com.), **84**, 85, 486, 487
  - optional arguments of, 85
- `\pagename` (redef. name), **381**
- `\pagenumbering` (page-number style com.), 409
- `\pageref` (cross-ref. com.), 19, 22, 243, **247**, 257, 310, 486
- `\pageref*` (`hyperref` cross-ref. com.), 310
- pages
  - breaking, **84–85**, 251
    - in `align` environment, 230
    - in `cases` subsidiary environment, 230
    - in displayed math environments, **230–231**
    - in `gather` environment, 230
    - in multiline math environments, 231
    - preventing, 231
  - components of, 258
  - headers, *see* running heads
  - layout of, **258–260**, 301
    - for `amsart` document class, 259
    - numbering, style of, 409
    - odd, starting chapters on, 474
    - orientation of, document class options for, 295
  - referencing, 247
    - with `varioref` package, 301
  - size changing with `\enlargethispage`, 85, 486, 488
  - styles of, 258–260
  - title, 522
    - document class options for, 237, 287, 288, 295
    - of articles, 237, 239
    - of books, 473, 474
    - of presentations, 27
  - pages (BIB<sub>E</sub>X database field), 431
    - page ranges in, 433
  - `\pagestyle` (set page style), 258
  - pagination, 486–487
  - paper size, document class options for, 286, 294
  - `\par` (paragraph breaking com.), 9, **48**, 49, 57, 74, 263
  - `\par` (paragraph-breaking com.), 80, 102, 108
    - in error messages, 83
  - `\paragraph` (struct. com.), **240**, 241, 472
  - `\paragraph` (counter), **407**
  - paragraph boxes, 95–96
  - paragraph text symbol, *see* `\P`
  - `\paragraph*` (struct. com.), 241
  - `\paragraphname` (`hyperref` redef. name), **311**
  - paragraphs, 48, **83–84**
    - breaking into lines, 11, 80, 82, 517
    - breaking lines in, 65
    - hanging indents, 84
    - horizontal alignment of, 108
    - indentation of first lines, 84, 88, 301, **411**
    - interline spacing of, 41
    - terminating
      - with blank lines, 9, 41, **48**, 83, 102, 128

- with `\par` command, **48**, 49, 57, 74, 80, 83, 108  
vertical spacing between, 108, 411, 416, 420, 483
- `paralist` (pack.), 107
- `\parallel` (|| binary rel.), 493
- `\parbox` (box com.), 91, 93, **95**, 122, 413  
in `tabular` environments, 95
- `parentequation`, 409
- parentheses (()), 7, 46  
as math delimiters, **15**, 17, 41, 147, **149**, 168, 204, 499  
in index entries, 460  
suppressing the use of in tags, 189
- `\parindent` (length com.), **411**, 422
- `\parsep` (length com.), **415**, **416**, 420, 422
- `\parskip` (length com.), **411**, **415**, 416, 422, 483
- `\part` (struct. com.), 241, 292, 339, **472**
- `part` (counter), 407
- `\partial` (math sym.), 498
- `\partname` (redef. name), 381  
and `hyperref` package, 311
- `\partopsep` (length com.), 416
- parts  
in books, 472  
in presentations, 341
- Patashnik, Oren, 427, 452, 560
- path attributes, *TikZ* graphics, 360–363
- pathnames, on Mac, Windows computer, and UNIX systems, 481
- `\pause` (beamer com.), 30, 87, 321, **321**, 325
- `pc` (point abs. unit), 411
- `pcr` (PSNFSS font name), 532
- Windows computers, 5, 481, 512  
FTP clients, 526
- PDF (Portable Document Format), 306–307, 488  
files  
bibliographic citations in, 308  
bookmarks in, 309  
creating, 307  
external hyperlinks in, 310–311  
for graphics, **249**  
for legacy documents, 307  
for presentations, 27, 313–347  
hyperlinks in, 307–311  
*JavaScript* in, 306  
size of, 306  
suppressing hyperlinks in, 310  
`typeset`, 6, 307  
viewing in Web browsers, 306
- fonts  
partial downloading of, 306  
proprietary, 306
- `pdftex` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 307
- percent (%)  
as comment character, 8, 45, **68–70**, 125, 282, 464  
in *BIBTeX* databases, 70, 449  
as text symbol, 7, 61, 64, 508  
in e-mail addresses, 268
- periods (.), 7, 46, **49–51**
- and initials, 51  
and italic correction, 76  
and spacing rules, 49–51  
end of sentences, 49  
following capital letters, 50  
in abbreviations, 49–50  
in bibliographies, 50  
in *BIBTeX* databases, 432  
terminating sentences with, **48–51**
- `\perp` (⊥ binary rel.), 493
- Personal *TeX*, Inc., 533
- personalized templates  
for AMS document classes, 282–285
- `\phantom` (spacing com.), **87**, 173, **175–176**, 211, 413
- `PHDTHESIS` (bibl. entry type), 431, **439–440**
- `\Phi` (Φ Greek char.), **148**, 492
- `\phi` (φ Greek char.), **147**, 492
- `phv` (PSNFSS font name), 532
- `\Pi` (Π Greek char.), **148**, 492
- `\pi` (π Greek char.), **147**, 492
- `pica` (pc abs. unit), 411
- `picture` (drawing env.), 249
- `pilcrow` (¶ text sym.), 64, 508
- `\pitchfork` (pitchfork rel.), 494
- placement  
of commas in formulas, 139  
of equation numbers, 286, 295  
of equations, 286, 295  
of figures, **250**, 251, 486, 488  
of `\index` commands, **464**, 487  
of index in document, 456, 467  
of `\label` commands, 487  
of limits, 287  
of roots, 145  
of tables, 486, 488  
of text boxes, 99
- `plain`  
*BIBTeX* style, 427  
page style, 258  
theorem style, **113**, 113–115
- `plain.bst` (*BIBTeX* style file), 427
- `plain.tex` (Plain *TeX* source file), 515

- platform independence
  - of graphics, 313
- plus (+), 14, 172, 175, 176, 204, 205
  - as binary operation, 496
- plus and minus rule, 172, 175, 176
  - and subformulas, 204
  - in `multiline` environments, 201
- `\pm` ( $\pm$  math op.), 496
- `\pmb{matrix}` (subsid. math env.), 17, 223
- `\pmb` (poor man's bold font com.), 185–186, 289
- `\pmod` ( (mod) math op.), 15, 154, 155
- `\pod` ( ( ) math op.), 15, 154, 155
- poetry, typing, 128–129
- point (`pt` abs. unit), 11, 40, 73, 77, 79, 80, 90, 92, 94, 95, 296, 411
- poor man's bold, 185–186, 289
- portability
  - of bibliographic databases, 432, 434
  - of prohibited characters, 47
- Portable Document Format, *see under PDF*
- Portable Graphics Format, 313
- position, of proclamation numbers, 115
- PostScript (PS), 305
  - documents on the Internet, 305
  - files
    - including fonts in, 305
    - size of, 305
  - fonts, 305, 513, 531–534
    - AMSFonts, 288, 289, 514, 515, 520
    - Computer Modern, 31, 513, 515, 531
    - European Modern, 514
    - obtaining, 534
    - using with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, 300, 533
- PostScript New Font Selection Scheme, *see PSNFSS*
- `\pounds`
  - math symbol (£), 498
  - pound sign or sterling (£), 509
- `\Pr` ( $\Pr$  math op.), 153, 500
- preamble, 24–239
  - commands in, 19, 24, 27, 54, 69, 83, 109, 111, 113, 115, 140, 183, 228, 237, 238, 282, 288, 307, 314–315, 350, 370, 379, 386, 391, 410, 468, 480, 488, 518, 519
  - custom commands in, 238, 370
  - customizing, in template files, 282
  - defining counters in, 408
  - proclamations defined in, 238
- `\prec` (< binary rel.), 493
- `\precapprox` ( $\lesssim$  binary rel.), 494
- `\preccurlyeq` ( $\leqslant$  binary rel.), 494
- `\preceq` ( $\leq$  binary rel.), 493
- `\precnapprox` ( $\not\lesssim$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\precneqq` ( $\not\leq$  neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\precsim` ( $\lesssim$  binary rel.), 494
- preparation
  - final, of books, 484–489
  - of illustrations, 485
- presentations, 27–30, 313
  - `babybeamer1`, 322, 321–323
  - `babybeamer2`, 319
  - `babybeamer3`, 326
  - `babybeamer4`, 328
  - `babybeamer5`, 327
  - `babybeamer6`, 330
  - `babybeamer7`, 332–335
  - `babybeamer8`, 336
  - `babybeamer9`, 338
  - `babybeamer10`, 346, 347
  - `beamertexture1`, 340
  - `beamertexture2`, 341, 342
  - body of, 315
  - columns in, 335
  - commands for, 28, 336, 339, 345
    - optional arguments of, 339
  - cross-referencing within, 316
  - equations in, 316
  - flexibility in, 345, 346
  - frames in, 345
  - hyperlinks in, 331–335, 345, 346
  - in color, 336–338
  - lists in, 327–329
  - navigation symbols, 341
  - notes in, 342, 343
  - overlays in, 321, 321–331
    - commands for, 30, 321, 322, 325
    - examples of, 323–324
    - layering, 321, 323
    - specifications, 325, 329
    - syntax of, 325–327
  - parts in, 341
  - planning, 345–346
  - preamble of, 27, 314–315
  - `quickbeamer1`, 315, 317, 318, 319
  - `quickbeamer2`, 319, 320
  - sectioning of, 316
  - sidebars, 316
  - sidebars in, 331, 339
  - slides, 27, 321
  - structure of, 339
  - tables of contents in, 339, 345
  - themes for, 27, 316, 319, 343, 344, 345
    - color options, 344
    - font options, 345
  - theorems in, 345
  - top matter of, 27, 314–315, 319
  - with `beamer`, 27
  - with `beamer` document class, 313–347
  - preventing
    - case changes in bibliographic entries, 433

- hyphenation, 66–67, 91  
indentation of paragraphs, 84  
line breaks, 83, 91  
page breaks, 82, 85, 231  
removal  
    of horizontal space, 87  
    of vertical space, 89  
spaces following environments, 388  
`\prime` (' math sym.), 498  
`\prime` ('), 15, 142, 182, 498  
primitive commands, 382, 515  
PrintDirect  
     $\text{\LaTeX}$  app for iPad, 543  
Printer Pro  
     $\text{\LaTeX}$  app for iPad, 543  
printers  
    drivers for, 34, 517  
    specifying for `hyperref` package, 307  
    DVI drivers for, 300, 527  
    for iPad, 543  
`\Printindex` (index com. for multiple indexes), 469  
`\printindex` (index com.), 456, 467  
printing  
    typeset (DVI) files, 517  
    typeset (PDF) files, 517  
`\proc` (doc. class), 516  
`\proc-1` (doc. class), 262, 381  
PROCEEDINGS (bibl. entry type), 431, 438–439, 442  
proceedings, conference, in  $\text{\BIBTeX}$   
    database files, 430  
processed index files, *see* `ind`  
processing  
    bibliographies, 443–452  
    indexes, 465–467  
proclamations, 40, 101, 108–115, 414  
    commands for  
        `\newtheorem` (procl. com.), 109, 111, 113, 115, 282, 410  
        `\newtheorem*` (procl. com.), 113, 387  
        `\newtheoremstyle`, 115  
        `\theoremstyle` (procl. com.), 113–115  
        `\theoremstyle*` (procl. com.), 113–115  
counters for, 406  
defining, 109, 111, 112, 115, 282, 387, 410  
    in preamble, 238  
    with `theorem` package, 301  
environments for  
    `theorem`, 35, 109, 112, 330, 388  
invoking, 35, 109, 112, 330, 388  
lines following, 41, 102  
lists in, 110  
logical design using, 522  
names of, 112  
numbering of  
    consecutively, 111–112  
    within sections, 111  
position of numbers, 115  
styles of, 113–115, 514  
    `definition`, 113, 113–114  
    `plain`, 113, 113–114  
    `remark`, 113, 113–114  
unnumbered, 113, 114, 387  
`\prod` ( $\prod$  large math op.), 156, 501  
products, 18, 155  
`products.pdf` (sample illus. file), 315  
`program` (pack.), 127  
programs, typing, 125–127, 129–131  
prohibited keys, 7, 47  
`\projlim` (proj lim math op.), 153, 500  
prompts, 521  
    \* (interactive), 97, 381–383, 521  
    \*\*, 521  
    ?, 521  
    file name, 521  
    responding to, 521  
`\proof` (text env.), 101, 115–117, 290, 315  
    changing q.e.d. symbol, 379  
    lines following, 41, 102  
    lists in, 115  
    optional arguments of, 116  
    placement of q.e.d. symbol, 116  
`\proofname` (redef. name), 381  
proofs, 115–117  
proportional fonts, 72, 73  
propositions, *see* proclamations  
`\proto` ( $\alpha$  binary rel.), 493  
`\protect` (protect fragile commands), 58, 240, 241, 472, 477  
protecting  
    capitalization in bibliographic entries, 433  
    fragile commands, 58, 240, 241, 472, 477  
protocols  
    File Transfer, *see* FTP  
    Hypertext Transfer, *see* HTTP  
`\providecommand` (custom com.), 377, 379, 383  
`\providecommand*` (custom com.), 377  
`\ProvidesPackage` (pack. com.), 520  
providing commands, 379  
`PS`, *see* PostScript  
`ps2pdf` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 307  
`psamsfonts`  
    `amsfonts` package option, 289  
    document class option, 288  
`psffonts.ins` (PSNFSS distr. file), 532  
`\Psi` ( $\Psi$  Greek char.), 148, 492  
`\psi` ( $\psi$  Greek char.), 147, 492  
PSNFSS (PostScript New Font Selection Scheme), 532, 533

- distribution, 532–533
- font names (Berry scheme), 532
- `psnfss` (L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X distr. directory), 299
- `psnfss` (pack.), 300
- `pt` (point abs. unit), 11, 40, 73, 77, 79, 80, 90, 92, 94, 95, 296, 411
- `ptm` (PSNFSS font name), 532
- `publisher` (BIBT<sub>E</sub>X database field), 430, 431
- publishers, preparing manuscripts for, 471
- punctuation
  - in BIBT<sub>E</sub>X databases, 429–434, 450–452
  - marks, 7, 11, 41, 46, 58–59, 64, 140, 372, 505, 508
- `pybibliographer` bibl. manager, 452
- q.e.d. symbol, 116, 379
- `\qedhere` (proof com.), 41, 117
- `\qedsymbol` ( $\square$  math sym.), 115, 379
  - suppressing, 116
- `\quad` (spacing com.), 86, 90, 174, 174, 212, 503, 510
- `\quad` (spacing com.), 18, 86, 90, 138, 174, 174, 212, 503, 510
- question marks (?), 7, 46
  - Spanish (‘), 64, 505, 508
  - terminating sentences with, 48–51
- `quickbeamer.pdf` (sample file), 314
- `quickbeamer.tex` (sample file), 314–315
- `quickbeamer1.pdf` (sample file), 315
- `quickbeamer1.tex` (sample file), 315, 316
- `quickbeamer2.pdf` (sample file), 319
- `quickbeamer2.tex` (sample file), 319
- quiet mode, 521
- `quotation` (disp. text env.), 128, 414
- quotation marks, 7, 47, 58, 59, 64
  - double quote key, 7, 46, 47, 59
  - in BIBT<sub>E</sub>X database fields, 451, 452
  - in BIBT<sub>E</sub>X entries, 442
  - in `\index` commands, 463
  - European, 509
  - single quote key, 7, 15, 46, 59
  - typing, 9
- quotations, typing, 127–128
- `quote` (disp. text env.), 40, 127, 414
- `\quotedblbase` (Eur. quot. mark), 509
- quoting, special characters in `\index` commands, 463
- `\r` (° ring text accent), 63, 506
- `radius` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 351
- `\raggedleft` (align. command dec.), 108
- `\raggedright` (align. command dec.), 108
- Rahtz, Sebastian, 249, 307, 513, 558
- `\raisebox` (box com.), 99, 177
- ranges, numeric, 11, 59, 64, 508
  - in BIBT<sub>E</sub>X databases, 430, 433
  - in index entries, 460
- `\rangle` (math delimiter), 149, 150, 499
- `rawfonts` (pack.), 301
- `\rbrace` (math delimiter), 41, 149, 499
- `\rbrack` (] math delimiter), 149, 499
- `\rceil` (] math delimiter), 149, 499
- `\Re` ( $\Re$  math sym.), 498
- read-only, making templates, 285
- readability
  - of documents, 77, 345
  - of source files, 13, 14, 49, 119, 138, 163, 367–371, 384, 422
- Reader, Adobe Acrobat, *see under* Adobe Reader
- real numbers, in length commands, 410
- `rectangle` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 355, 358, 359
- redefinable names, 310, 311, 367, 381, 380–381, 535
- redefining commands, 378–379
- `\ref` (cross-ref. com.), 19, 22, 40, 70, 107, 139, 203, 243, 244, 246, 289, 301, 310, 388
- `\ref*` (hyperref cross-ref. com.), 310
- references
  - absolute, 20, 103, 190, 246–247
  - bibliographic, 50, 251–257, 316, 379, 414, 443
    - citing, 20, 256
    - citing with BIBT<sub>E</sub>X, 444
    - including without citing, 445
  - defining, 19, 22, 37, 40, 139, 203, 219, 240, 243, 316
  - symbolic, 70
  - symbolic, showing in margins, 246, 301
  - to equations, 19, 22, 40, 139, 140, 191, 203, 207, 243, 244, 254, 316
  - to pages, 19, 22, 243, 247, 310, 486
    - and varioref package, 301
  - to sections, 19, 22, 107, 139, 203, 243, 244, 246, 289, 301, 310, 388
- referencing, *see* cross-referencing or symbolic referencing, *see* cross-referencing or symbolic referencing
- `\refname` (redef. name), 381
- `\refstepcounter` (cross-ref. counter incr. com.), 409
- registered trademark (® text sym.), 64, 508
- registers, 382
- relations, binary, *see* binary relations
- relative
  - numbering of equations, 189, 190, 247
  - spaces, 90
  - units, 90, 92, 95, 411
- `\relax` (do nothing com.), 390

- release dates, of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, 69, 239, 519  
**remark** (procl. style), 113, 113–115  
**\renewcommand** (custom com.), 39, 71, 72,  
83, 107, 116, 123, 257, 310, 374,  
377, 378–381, 383, 387, 388, 408–  
410  
**\renewcommand\*** (custom com.), 377  
**\renewenvironment** (custom com.), 388, 389  
**\renewenvironment\*** (custom com.), 389  
renumbering, automatic, 19, 34, 522  
**report** (doc. class), 241, 291, 291–296, 381,  
516  
reports, technical, in BIBT<sub>E</sub>X database files,  
440–441  
**reqno**  
    **amsmath** package option, 290  
    document class option, 19, 237, 286,  
    295  
required  
    arguments, 95, 97, 160, 181, 262, 263,  
    522  
    multiple, 13, 53, 121, 178, 180, 181,  
    260, 299, 384, 412, 413  
    of commands, 13, 53, 121, 178, 180,  
    181, 245, 260, 269, 412, 475, 480,  
    506  
    of environments, 53, 119, 211, 213,  
    224, 226, 253–254, 256, 297, 388–  
    390, 478  
    use braces ({}), 6, 10, 13, 53, 54,  
    517  
    bibliographic fields, 431, 432, 434–442  
**required** (L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X distr. directory), 299, 527  
    packages in, 300  
**\RequirePackage** (pack. com.), 177, 391  
research support (**\thanks** top matter  
com.), 72, 268–270, 284, 292  
resetting counters, 408, 409  
resolution, of Type 1 fonts, 531  
Return key, 7, 9, 47, 137, 521  
**\rfloor** (math delimiter), 149, 499  
**\rhd** (▷ math op.), 496  
**\rho** ( $\rho$  Greek char.), 147, 492  
**\right** (math delim.), 41, 149–150, 152,  
168, 224  
    blank, 150, 166  
    must be balanced, 150, 204  
**\right** (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 357, 362  
right double quote (")  
    text symbol, 59, 64, 508  
    typing, 9  
right justification of text, 10, 51  
right single quote (')  
    key, 7, 9, 46, 59  
    text symbol, 59, 509  
**\right)** () math delimiter), 15–17, 41, 147,  
149, 150, 168, 204, 223  
**\right.** (blank math delim.), 150  
**\right>** () math delimiter), 150  
**\right]** [] math delimiter), 15, 147, 165  
**\rightarrow** ( $\Rightarrow$  math arrow), 497  
**\rightarrowtail** ( $\rightarrow$  math arrow), 497  
**\rightharpoondown** ( $\rightarrow$  math arrow), 497  
**\rightharpoonup** ( $\rightarrow$  math arrow), 497  
**\rightleftarrows** ( $\rightleftharpoons$  math arrow), 497  
**\rightleftharpoons** ( $\rightleftharpoons$  math arrow), 497  
**\rightmargin** (length com.), 415, 416, 419  
**\rightrightarrows** ( $\rightleftarrows$  math arrow), 497  
**\rightsquigarrow** ( $\rightsquigarrow$  math arrow), 497  
**\rightthreetimes** ( $\times$  math op.), 496  
**\right|** (| math delimiter), 17, 150, 164,  
173, 175  
**ring** (° text accent), 63, 506  
**ring A** (Å), 64, 505  
**ring a** (å), 64, 505  
**\risingdotseq** ( $\equiv$  binary rel.), 494  
Ritter, R. M., 555  
**\rm** (obs. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09 font com.), 79  
**\rmfamily** (font shape com. dec.), 74, 107,  
506  
**\rmfamily** (font shape env.), 107  
**\Roman** (uppercase roman-numeral counter-  
style com.), 408  
**roman**  
    document font family, 73, 74, 532  
    font shape, 19, 72, 74, 107, 289, 506  
        math, 183, 183, 380  
**\roman** (lowercase roman-numeral counter-  
style com.), 107, 408  
roots, 18, 145–146  
    n-th, 18, 145  
        placement of, 145  
    square, 18, 145  
        using struts with, 187  
Rose, Kristoffer H., 230  
**\rotate** (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 358  
row separator (\\"), 17, 21, 22, 24, 82, 108,  
119, 125, 126, 129, 157, 199, 200,  
203, 204, 215, 219, 231, 263–267,  
285, 292, 297  
Rowley, Chris, xxxi, 513, 514, 560  
**\rightarrowtail** ( $\Rightarrow$  math arrow), 497  
**\rsh** ( $\pitchfork$  math arrow), 497  
**\rtimes** ( $\rtimes$  math op.), 496  
rubber lengths, 383, 414, 416, 517  
**\rule** (box com.), 97–99, 124  
rules (lines), filling lines with, *see also* lines  
    (rules), 90, 98

running  
*BuTeX*, 443–452  
*MakeIndex*, 465–467

running heads, 240, **258–260**  
 author’s name in, 265  
 fragile commands in, 58  
 title in, 264, 285

\rVert ( || math delimiter), 150  
 \rvert ( | math delimiter), 150

\S (§)  
 math symbol, 498  
 section text symbol, 64, 508

sample files  
 amsart.tpl, 282  
 amsproc.tpl, 285  
 babybeamer1.pdf, 321–323  
 babybeamer2.tex, 321  
 babybeamer3.tex, 326  
 babybeamer4.tex, 331  
 babybeamer5.tex, 327  
 babybeamer6.tex, 330, 331  
 babybeamer6block.tex, 331  
 babybeamer7.tex, 331–335  
 babybeamer8.tex, 335  
 babybeamer9.tex, 337  
 babybeamer10.tex, 346  
 beamerstructure.tex, 339, 341  
 cleardoublepage.sty, 85  
 covers.pdf, 26  
 firstarticle.tex, 24, 35, 36  
 firstarticlei.tex, 458, 466, 467  
 firstarticleill.tex, 27  
 firstpresentation.tex, 27  
 fonttbl.tex, 62, 118  
 formulanote.tex, 12–14, 38–39  
 german.tex, 536  
 ggamsart.tpl, 285  
 inbibl.tpl, 253  
 legacy-article.tex, 292, 293  
 letter.tex, 296–298  
 Louisville.tex, 27  
 newlattice.sty, 299, 384, 388, **390–400**, 400  
 NoticesV.pdf, 540  
 NoticesVI.pdf, 540  
 obtaining, 5  
 of presentations, 314–319  
 products.pdf (illus. file), 315  
 quickbeamer.pdf, 314  
 quickbeamer.tex, 314–315  
 quickbeamer1.pdf, 315  
 quickbeamer1.tex, 315, 316  
 quickbeamer2.pdf, 319  
 quickbeamer2.tex, 319

sample.cls (doc. class), 8  
 secondarticle-ref.tex, 308, 310  
 secondarticle.tex, 108, 113, 115, 218, 257, 262, 263, **274–278**, 376, 400, 443, 522  
 source file, 274–278  
 typeset, 274–281

secondarticleb.bib, 443, **443–449**  
 secondarticleb.tex, 427, 443, 445, 446, 449  
 secondarticleccom.tex, 382, 388, **400–522**  
 SymbolTables.pdf, 11, 13  
 template.bib, 429, 443, 452  
 textnote1.tex, 8–9  
 textnote1bad.tex, 11  
 textnote2.tex, 9–11  
 topmat.tpl, 271

sample.cls, 8  
 sample.cls (doc. class), 8

samples  
 font, 301  
 of bibliographies, **251–253**, 429, 443, 443–444, 452  
 of command (style) files, 299, 384, 388, **390–400**  
 of indexes, 458, 456–458

samples (folder), 5, 8, 10–12, 24, 27, 38, 62, 85, 118, 178, 218, 253, 271, 274, 282, 285, 292, 296, 308, 314, 315, 319, 327, 330, 331, 341, 345, 346, 364, 382, 390, 400, 429, 443, 444, 456, 474, 522, 536, 540  
 creating, 5

sans serif  
 document font family, **73**, 78, 532  
 font shape, 73, 74, 74, **107**, **183**, 183, 502, 506  
 Helvetica, 74, 532

\sb (math subscript com.), 142, 143  
 \sc (obs. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09 font com.), 79  
 scale (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 359

scaling graphics  
 in figures, 250  
 Schöpf, Rainer, 513, 560  
 Schndl, Bernd, 107  
 scharfes s (ß, SS), 64, 505  
 Schleyer, Antoinette Tingley, 205, 555, 560  
 school (BIBTeX database field), 431  
 Schröder, Martin, 513  
 scope  
 delimited by braces, **55–57**  
 of \allowdisplaybreaks commands, 230

- of command declarations, 108, **371–372**, 387
- of commands, **55–57**, 74, 123
  - global and local, 57
  - setting, with environments, 81, 201
- `\scriptscriptstyle` (math font size com.), **186**, 191
- `\scriptsize` (font size com.), **77**, 78, 507
- `\scriptstyle` (math font size com.), **186**, 191
- `\scshape` (font shape com. dec.), **74**, **75**, 107, 506
- `\scshape` (font shape env.), 107
- `\searrow` (\math arrow), 497
- `\sec` (sec math op.), **153**, 500
- `secnumdepth` (counter), 410
- `secondarticle-ref.tex` (sample file), 308, 310
- `secondarticle.tex` (sample file), 108, 113, 115, 218, 257, 262, 263, **274–278**, 376, 400, 443, 522
  - source file, 274–278
  - typeset, 274–281
- `secondarticleb.aux` (sample aux. file), 447
- `secondarticleb.bbl` (sample bibl. file), 449
- `secondarticleb.bib` (sample bibl. file), 443, **443–449**
- `secondarticleb.blg` (sample BBTEX log file), 448
- `secondarticleb.tex` (sample file), 427, 443, 445, 446, 449
- `secondarticleccom.tex` (sample file), 382, 388, **400**, 522
- `\section` (struct. com.), **240–243**, 319, 339, 473
  - optional argument of, 241
- `section` (counter), 406, **407**
- `section` (§ text sym.), **64**, 508
- `\section*` (struct. com.), 241, 473
- sectioning
  - commands
    - optional arguments of, 241
    - provided by `amsart` doc. class, **242**
    - provided by `article` doc. class, **242**
    - provided by book doc. classes, 472–473
    - syntax of, 241
  - of articles, **240–243**
  - of books, **472–473**, 481
  - of documents, 8, 24–243, 251, 257, 274, 292, 296–298, 414, 443, 455, 465, **472–473**, 512, 522
  - of presentations, 316
- `\sectionname` (redef. name)
  - and `hyperref` package, 311
- sections, numbering of, 240
  - in books, 472
  - of equations within, 19, 140, 238
  - of proclamations within, 111
- `\see` (indexing cross-ref. com.), 463
- `\seename` (redef. name), **381**
- `\selectfont` (font selection com.), 79
- selecting
  - files to include, **250**, 408, 479, **480**, 481
  - fonts, 72–80
- semicolon (;), 7, 46
- `\semithick` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 360
- sentences
  - terminating, 9, **48–51**
    - with periods, 268
- `\series` (BBTEX database field), 431
- series commands, for fonts, *see under* font commands and font command declarations
- `\serif` (font shape), *see also under* roman, **73**, **73**
- Seroul, Raymond, 555, 560
- `\setbeamercolor` (beamer com.), 338
- `\setbeamertemplate` (beamer com.), 342
- `\setcounter` (counter-setting com.), 57, 221, **406**, 409
- `\setlength` (length setting com.), 40, 84, **97**, **412**
- `\setlength` environment, 81, 201
- `\setminus` (\math op.), **496**
- `\setspace` (pack.), 83
- `\settodepth` (measurement com.), 413
- `\settoheight` (measurement com.), 413
- `\settowidth` (measurement com.), 413
- `\sffamily` (font shape com. dec.), **74**, 78, 107, 506
- `\sffamily` (font shape env.), 107
- SGML (Standard Generalized Markup Language), 513
- shape commands, for fonts, *see under* font commands and font command declarations
- `\sharp` (# math sym.), **498**
- `\shift` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 359
- short
  - arguments, of custom commands, 377–378
  - arguments, of custom environments, 389
  - commands, **57**, 74, 263, 274
  - pages, warnings about, 517
- shorthand, *see under* custom commands
- `\shortmid` (| binary rel.), **494**
- `\shortparallel` (|| binary rel.), **494**
- `\shoveleft` (align. com.), 202

- \shoveright (align. com.), 202
- \show (command-examination com.), 382, 382, 383, 521
- \showhyphens (hyph.-disp. com.), 67
- showidx (pack.), 299, 459
- showkeys (pack.), 246, 301
  - options, 246
- \showthe (value-examination com.), 97, 382, 383, 521
- shrinkable lengths, 85, 86, 382, 414, 416, 420, 517
- side-setting math symbols, 181–182
- sidebars, in **beamer** presentations, 316, 319, 331
- \sideset (math com.), 181–182
- \Sigma ( $\Sigma$  Greek char.), 148, 492
- \sigma ( $\sigma$  Greek char.), 147, 492
- \signature (letter com.), 297
- \sim (~ binary rel.), 493
- \simeq ( $\simeq$  binary rel.), 493
- simple alignment, of formulas, 21, 21–23
- \sin (sin math op.), 17, 152, 153, 183, 500
- single
  - guillemet, 509
  - quote, 9
    - keys, 7, 15, 46, 59
    - text symbols, 509
  - single quotation, 509
  - single-lined boxes, *see under* boxes
- \sinh (sinh math op.), 153, 500
- size
  - of files
    - PDF, 306, 307
    - PostScript, 305
    - scanned, 307
  - of fonts, 40, 73, 78, 507, 77–507
    - commands for, *see under* font commands
    - document class options for, 285, 294
    - in math, 186
    - of hyperlinks in PDF files, 310
    - of math delimiters, 150–152, 168
    - of paper, document class options for, 286, 294
- \sl (obs. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09 font com.), 79
- slanted (font shape), 72, 74, 75, 78, 79, 107, 139, 140, 506
  - and italic correction, 77
  - context dependence of, 75
- slashed L's and O's (l, L,  $\phi$ ,  $\emptyset$ ), 64, 505
- slides, *see under* presentations, *see under* presentations
- slides (obs. doc. class), 291, 516
- \slshape (font shape com. dec.), 74, 75, 77–79, 107, 506
- \slshape (font shape env.), 107
- slugs, 80, 81, 237, 288, 295
- \SMALL (font size com.), 77, 78, 507
- \Small (font size com.), 77, 78, 507
- \small (font size com.), 77, 78, 507
- small caps (font shape), 72, 74, 75, 107, 506
  - for abbreviations and acronyms, 75, 482
- \smaller (font size com.), 78
- \smallfrown ( $\smallfrown$  binary rel.), 494
- \smallint ( $\smallint$  math sym.), 498
- \smallmatrix (subsid. math env.), 223, 224
- \smallsetminus ( $\smallsetminus$  math op.), 496
- \smallskip (spacing com.), 40, 88
- \smallsmile ( $\smallsmile$  binary rel.), 494
- \smash (spacing com.), 99, 188
  - optional argument of, 188
- \smile ( $\smile$  binary rel.), 493
- Snow, Wynter, 555, 560
- solid boxes, 97–98, *see also* struts
- solution (**beamer** distr. directory), 345
- somedefs (pack.), 301
- sort keys, 461–462
  - case sensitivity of, 468
- sorting, of index entries, 461–462
- source files, 5–7, 12, 24, 32, 37, 48, 65, 71, 129, 423, 453, 467, 475
- errors in, 38–39, 521
- putting on the Internet, 305–311
  - disadvantages of, 305
- readability of, 13, 49, 138, 163, 367–371, 384, 422
- structure of, *see also* document
- typesetting, 5, 11, 20, 34, 36, 38, 47, 58, 516, 521
  - white space in, 14
- sources, for fonts, 534
- \sp (math superscript com.), 142, 143, 167
- space bar, 7, 9, 47, 313, 321
- spaces
  - at the beginning of a line, 48, 87
  - at the end of a line, 48, 49, 68
  - blue, *see also* tie, unbreakable spaces, nonbreakable spaces, 60
  - consist of glue, 517
  - expanding, 90–91
  - filling lines with, 90
  - in arguments of commands, 69
    - \bibitem, 256
    - \cite, 256
    - \index, 467–468
  - in command definitions, 371
  - in command names, 52
  - in custom commands, 302

- in delimited commands, 384–385  
 in math environments, 137  
 in `tabular` environments, 119  
 in `\verb` commands, 132  
 in `verbatim` environments, 130  
 interword (`\_`), 9, 50, 54, 86, 174, 510  
 multiple, act as one, 14, 48, 55  
 separating words with, 9, 48, 388, 433  
 suppressing, 388, 464  
 terminating commands with, 13, 52, 138  
 typed for readability, 14, 49, 119, 371  
 unbreakable (`\~` tie), 9, 47, 50, 59, 60, 83, 510  
 absorb spaces, 60  
 in `BIBTeX` databases, 433  
 with cross-references, 246  
 visible (`_`), 9, 47  
 and `\verb*` command, 132
- spacing  
 between characters, 517  
 between dots with `\hdotsfor` commands, 221  
 between math symbols, 171–176  
 commands, *see* spacing commands  
 determined by document classes, 86  
 horizontal  
   in math, 13, 138–139, 171–176, 221, 224  
   in text, 9, 40, 86–88, 98, 110, 422, 503, 510  
   interword, 9, 48–51, 54, 60, 86, 388, 433, 510  
   preventing removal of, 87  
 in text, 86–91  
 intercolumn, 195, 197, 207, 208  
   in aligned math environments, 212, 216  
   in `tabular` environments, 119  
 interline, 41, 152, 231, 374, 484  
   adjusting, 79, 82–83, 88, 98  
   double, 83  
 rules  
   and delimited commands, 384–385  
   for commands, 52, 138  
   in arguments of `\index` commands, 467–468  
   in math, 13, 14, 138–139, 171–176, 187–188  
   in text, 9, 14, 48–51, 86–91  
   in `\text` commands, 138  
 vertical  
   adding to table of contents, 476  
   adjusting, 123, 483
- adjusting with the `setspace` package, 83  
 in boxes, 99  
 in indexes, 257, 455  
 in math, 187–188  
 in text, 40, 88–89, 188, 382, 476, 484, 488  
 preventing removal of, 89  
 using the `setspace` package, 83
- spacing commands  
 avoiding direct use of, 483  
 horizontal, *see* horizontal spacing  
 vertical, *see* vertical spacing
- `\spadesuit` ( $\clubsuit$  math sym.), 498  
`\spbreve` ( $\breve{}$  math accent), 158, 502  
`\spcheck` ( $\check{}$  math accent), 158, 167, 502  
`\spddot` ( $\ddot{}$  math accent), 158, 502  
`\spddot` ( $\ddot{\cdot}$  math accent), 158, 502  
`\spdot` ( $\dot{\cdot}$  math accent), 158, 502  
 special  
   braces, 13, 55, 57, 136, 137, 140  
   balancing, 56  
   characters, 11, 47, 60, 61, 62, 62, 505–509  
   in `\index` commands, 463  
   keys, 7, 12, 47, 60  
 spelling checkers, 35  
`\sphat` ( $\hat{}$  math accent), 158, 502  
`\sphericalangle` ( $\measuredangle$  math sym.), 498  
 Spivak, Michael D., 512, 533  
`\split` (subsid. math align. env.), 196, 198, 217–220, 286  
 and `\allowdisplaybreaks` commands, 231  
 numbering of equations within, 217–219  
 rules for, 219  
 splitting  
   documents into multiple files, 479–481  
   formulas across lines, 200–202  
`\sptilde` ( $\tilde{}$  math accent), 158, 502  
`\sqcap` ( $\sqcap$  math op.), 496  
`\sqcup` ( $\sqcup$  math op.), 496  
`\sqrt` ( $\sqrt{x}$  math com.), 13, 18, 145, 175  
   optional argument of, 53  
`\sqsubset` ( $\sqsubset$  binary rel.), 493  
`\sqsubseteqq` ( $\sqsubseteq$  binary rel.), 493  
`\sqsupset` ( $\sqsupset$  binary rel.), 493  
`\sqsupseteqq` ( $\sqsupseteq$  binary rel.), 493  
`\square` ( $\square$  math sym.), 498  
 square roots, 18, 145  
`\ss` (`SS`), 64, 505  
`\ss` (`\$`), 64, 505  
 stacking math symbols, 41, 178–181  
`\stackrel` (symbol-building com.), 41

- Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML), 513  
`\star` ( $\star$  math op.), 496  
`start angle` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 355  
 start of chapters, document class options for, 474  
`\stepcounter` (counter-incr. com.), 409  
 sterling ( $\text{\pounds}$  text sym.), 509  
**STIX**  
     `stix.pdf` (math symbol list), 178  
     fonts, 177  
     math symbols, 171–176  
`stix` (pack.), 177  
**STIX** math symbols, **178**  
`stix.pdf` (math symbol list), 178  
`\stop` (interactive control com.), 521  
 stretchable  
     horizontal braces, 159–160  
     lengths, 86, **383**, **414**, 416, 517  
     lines, 160  
     math arrows, **160**, 229–230  
     math delimiters, 41, 149–150  
     math symbols, 159–161  
     vertical spacing, in displayed text environments, 414  
**STRING** (bibl. entry type), 442  
 structural commands  
     `\appendix`, 243, 473  
     `\backmatter`, 473  
     `\chapter`, 241, 243, 292, 472, **472**, 473  
     `\frontmatter`, 473  
     hierarchy of, 240, 241, 472  
     in presentations, 339  
     `\mainmatter`, 473  
     optional arguments of, 241  
     `\paragraph`, **240**, 241, 472  
     `\paragraph*`, 241  
     `\part`, 241, 292, **472**  
     provided by `amsart` doc. class, 242  
     provided by `article` doc. class, 242  
     provided by book doc. classes, 472–473  
     `\section`, **240–243**, 473  
     `\section*`, 241, 473  
     `\ subparagraph`, **240**, 241, 472  
     `\subsection`, **240**, 241, 472, 473  
     `\subsection*`, 473  
     `\subsubsection`, **240**, 241, 472  
     syntax of, 241  
 structures, theorem-like, *see* proclamations  
 struts, **98–99**, 123, 187  
 style (`sty`) files, 238, **370**, **390–400**  
     commands in, 391  
     terminating, 399  
 style files, `BiBTeX`, *see* `bst`  
 styles  
     bibliographical, *see also* `bst`, 256  
     for counters, 71, 107, 387, 408, **408–409**, 418  
     of pages, 258–260  
     of proclamations, **113–115**, 514  
     of tables, 124  
     text environments, 107  
`\subarray` (subsid. math env.), 145, 157  
 subentries, in indexes, 257, 455, **459**, 460, 462  
`\subequations` (disp. math env.), **190**, 191, 206, 409  
 subformulas  
     indentation of, 205  
     rules for, **203–204**, 210–211  
     shorthand commands for, 368–370, 376–377  
`\subitem` (index com.), 257, 455  
`\subjclass` (top matter com.)  
     optional arguments of, 269  
     rules for using, 269  
`\subclassname` (redef. name), 381  
 subject classifications, AMS, 269  
`\subparagraph` (struct. com.), **240**, 241, 472  
`\subparagraph` (counter), **407**  
 subscripts, math, **15**, 16, **142–143**, 144, 165  
     as limits, **16**, **144**, 153–155, 165, 166, 286, 380  
     as multiline limits, 157  
     double, 186  
     font size of, 186  
     with horizontal braces, 159  
`\subsection` (struct. com.), **240**, 241, 339, 472, 473  
`\subsection` (counter), **407**  
`\subsection*` (struct. com.), 473  
`\subsectionname` (`hyperref` redef. name), 311  
`\Subset` ( $\Subset$  binary rel.), 494  
`\subset` ( $\subset$  binary rel.), 493  
`\subsearrow` ( $\subseteq$  binary rel.), 493  
`\subsearrowq` ( $\subseteq$  binary rel.), 494  
`\subsetneq` ( $\subsetneq$  neg. binary rel.), 495  
`\subsetneqq` ( $\subsetneqq$  neg. binary rel.), 495  
 subsidiary math environments  
     `aligned`, 198, **215–217**, 231  
     `alignedat`, **215–217**, 227, 231  
     and `\allowdisplaybreaks`  
         commands, 231  
`array`, 196, 198, 217, 220, **224–227**, 227, 300, 513

- Bmatrix**, **223**  
**bmatrix**, **223**  
cases, 23–24, 196, 198, **227–228**  
CD, 228–230  
for aligning formulas, 196, **197**, **215–220**, 231, 286  
gathered, 198, 215–217, 219, 231  
**matrix**, 16–17, 196, 198, 220, **220–227**  
numbering of, 217, 219  
page breaks in, 230  
**pmatrix**, 17, **223**  
**smallmatrix**, 223, 224  
**split**, 196, 198, **217–220**, 231, 286  
**subarray**, 145, 157  
**Vmatrix**, 167, **223**  
**vmatrix**, 17, **223**  
**\substack** (math com.), 145, 157, **157**  
substitution, of fonts, 78, 306, 485  
subsubentries, in indexes, 257, 455, **460**, 462  
**\subsubitem** (index com.), 257, 455  
**\subsubsection** (struct. com.), **240**, 241, 472  
**\subsubsection** (counter), 407  
**\subsubsectionname** (redef. name), 310  
subtraction, 14, 47, 141  
**\succ** ( $>$  binary rel.), 493  
**\succapprox** ( $\gtrapprox$  binary rel.), 494  
**\succcurlyeq** ( $\succcurlyeq$  binary rel.), 494  
**\succeq** ( $\succeq$  binary rel.), 493  
**\succnapprox** ( $\gtrapprox$  binary rel.), 495  
**\succneqq** ( $\not\succ$  binary rel.), 495  
**\succnsim** ( $\succnsim$  binary rel.), 495  
**\succsim** ( $\succsim$  binary rel.), 494  
**\sum** ( $\sum$  large math op.), 18, 156, 185, 501  
with primes, 181  
**\sumlimits** (opt. of amsmath pack.), **287**  
sums, 18, 155  
**\sup** (sup math op.), 153, 500  
superscripts, **15**, 16, **142–143**, 144, 158, 165  
as limits, **16**, **144**, 153, 155, 165  
as multiline limits, 157  
in math  
as limits, 286  
font size of, 186  
with horizontal braces, 159  
in text, 299, **509**  
support, technical, *see* technical support  
**\suppressfloats** (float com.), 251  
suppressing  
creation of auxiliary files, 488, 518  
hyperlinks in PDF files, 310  
indents (**\noindent** com.), 84, 486  
italic correction, 76–77  
ligatures, **62**, 165, 369  
line breaks (**\nolinebreak** com.), 83  
loading of the amsmath package, 288  
numbering, 199, 203  
of equations, 22, 140, 189, 199, 201, 203, 206, 219, 260  
of first page of documents, 260  
of proclamations, 113, 114, 387  
of structural units, 241, 473  
**Overfull \hbox** warnings, 80  
page breaks (**\nopagebreak** com.), 85  
placement of floats, 251  
q.e.d. symbol, 116  
spaces, 388, 464  
**\Supset** ( $\supseteq$  binary rel.), 494  
**\supset** ( $\supset$  binary rel.), 493  
**\supseteqq** ( $\supseteqq$  binary rel.), 493  
**\supseteqqq** ( $\supseteqqq$  binary rel.), 494  
**\supsetneq** ( $\supsetneq$  binary rel.), 495  
**\supsetneqq** ( $\supsetneqq$  binary rel.), 495  
**\supsetneqqq** ( $\supsetneqqq$  binary rel.), 495  
**\surd** ( $\sqrt$  math sym.), 498  
Sutor, Robert, 558  
Swanson, Ellen, 205, 555, 560  
**\swapnumbers** (theorem-style com.), 115  
**\swarrow** ( $\swarrow$  math arrow), 497  
**\symbol** (symbol com.), **61**, 299  
symbol alphabets, math, **184**  
blackboard bold, 184  
calligraphic, 184  
Euler Fraktur, 184  
Greek, 184  
symbolic references, showing in margins, **246**, 301  
symbolic referencing, *see also* cross-referencing,  
*see also* cross-referencing, *see also* cross-referencing, **19–246**, 518  
symbols  
as footnote indicators, 71  
math, 13, 38, 47, 115, **147–503**  
alphabets, **184**  
and delimiters, 16, 148, 150  
bold, **185–186**, 289, 300  
building new, 166, **178–182**, 376  
classification of, **172–173**, 182  
declaring types of, 182  
end of proof, 97, 379  
in text, 369  
large, 215–217  
negated, 181–182  
shorthand commands for, 368  
side-setting, 181–182  
sizes of, 186  
spacing of, 171–176  
stacking, 41, 178–181

- STIX, 171–178
- stretchable, 159–161
- suppressing, 115, 116
- text, 60, 63, 267, 506, 508, 509
- SymbolTables.pdf** (sample file), 11, 13
- systems of equations, 212–213
- \t** ( $\text{^}$  tie text accent), 63, 506
- T1 font encoding, 66, 509, 535
- tab
  - character, 47, 48, 52, 86
  - Tab key, 7, 9, 47
- Tab key, 7, 9, 47
- tabbing** (display text env.), 125–127
- table** (counter), 407
- table** (float env.), 248–249
  - optional arguments of, 250, 488
  - placement of, 486, 488
- table\*** (float env.), 249
- \tablename** (redef. name), 381
  - and **hyperref** package, 311
- \tableofcontents** (front-matter com.), 316, 475, 519
- tables, 117–124, 125, 226, 249, 250, 301, 513
  - captions in, 27, 118, 248, 478
  - fragile commands in, 58
  - commands for, 27, 119, 121–124, 248, 478
  - cross-referencing of, 118
  - designing, 124
  - double-column, 249
  - float controls, 118
  - forcing typesetting of, 85
  - hyphenation, 515
  - intersection of lines in, 124, 301
  - lists of, *see under* lists
  - multiline entries in, 122
  - multipage, 301
  - numbering of, 248
  - placement of, 486, 488
  - style of, 124
  - typeset inline, 117
- tables of contents, 240, 309, 475–477
  - adding a line to, 475–476, 489
  - adding vertical spacing to, 476
  - auxiliary file (**toc**), 475, 488, 519
  - commands, 475, 476
  - depth of, 410
  - fragile commands in, 58, 477
  - in frames, 316
  - in presentations, 345
  - typesetting, 475–477
- tabs, setting, 125
- \tabular** (table env.), 62, 117–124, 226, 249, 300, 301, 513
  - arguments of, 119
  - optional, 119
  - breaking lines in, 119
  - column-formatting in, 119
  - horizontal lines in, 119, 121
  - intercolumn space in, 119
  - \parbox** in, 95
  - rules for, 119
  - vertical lines in, 119
  - width of columns in, 120
- \tabularx** (pack.), 301
- \tag**, 20, 189, 189, 199, 201, 203, 206, 217, 219, 246
- \tag\***, 189
- tags (names for equations), 20, 189–191, 199, 201, 203, 206, 217, 219, 246
  - top-or-bottom placement of, 286
- \tan** (tan math op.), 153, 500
- \tanh** (tanh math op.), 153, 500
- Tantau, Till, 313, 347, 350, 554, 560
- \tau** ( $\tau$  Greek char.), 147, 492
- \tbinom** (inline-style binomial com.), 143
- tbtags** (doc. class opt.), 286
- technical reports, in Bib<sub>TeX</sub> database files, 440–441
- technical support
  - on the Internet, 529
  - provided by Te<sub>X</sub> users groups, 528
  - provided by the AMS, 529
- TECHREPORT** (bibl. entry type), 431, 440–441
- template.bib** (sample bibl. file), 429, 443, 452
- templates, 261, 294
  - bibliographical, 251, 429, 443, 452
  - customizing
    - for AMS document classes, 282–285
  - ggamsart.tpl**, 285
  - myams.tpl**, 282–285
  - personalized
    - making read-only, 285
- terminating
  - captions, 478
  - commands, 10, 13, 14, 52, 54, 65, 131, 138
- environments, 52
  - fields in Bib<sub>TeX</sub> database entries, 451
  - files, 399, 480
  - lines, 69, 142, 371
    - TikZ, 351
  - paragraphs, 41, 48, 83
  - sentences, 9, 48–51, 268
- Te<sub>X</sub>, 31, 32, 511

- commands, 39, 383, 385  
    to avoid using, 483  
commands in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, 484  
distribution, 515  
extensibility of, 31  
history of, 511–515  
inner workings of, 515  
inputs folders, 532–533  
layers of, 515–516  
Plain, 515  
programming in, 31  
resources on the Internet, 529  
structure of, 515  
users groups, *see* T<sub>E</sub>X users groups  
    *and* TUG  
\T<sub>E</sub>X (T<sub>E</sub>X com.), 63  
T<sub>E</sub>X users groups, 525–529, 535  
T<sub>E</sub>X Writer  
    for iPad, 540, 550–551  
tex4ht (opt. of *hyperref* pack.), 307  
T<sub>E</sub>X Live (TUG DVD/CD), 529  
Texpad  
    for iPad, 540, 544–550  
text, 6  
    accents, 53, 63, 506  
    blocks, width of, 260  
    boxes, *see* text boxes  
    centering, *see* centering text, **center**  
        (text align. env.), *and* \centering,  
        *see* centering text, **center** (text  
        align. env.), *and* \centering  
    custom commands for, 370  
    editors, 5, 6, 12, 32, 36, 47, 68, 72,  
        369, 543  
    framing, 93  
    in math mode, 13, 18, 66, 83, 91, 138,  
        146–147, 164, 183, 213–215, 229,  
        289  
        specifying fonts for, 146  
    in tables  
        multicolumn, 121–124  
        multiline, 122  
    mode, 6  
    spacing in, 86–91  
    style commands, *see* text style com-  
        mands  
    symbols, *see* text symbols  
    typing, 45–99  
    using math symbols in, 369  
    white space in, 86–91  
\text (box com.), 13, 18, 66, 67, 83, 91,  
    146–147, 164, 165, 193, 229, 289  
    spacing rules in, 138  
text boxes, 91–99  
    alignment of contents in, 92, 96  
    behave as single characters, 91  
commands for  
    \framebox, 93  
    \makebox, 91, 91, 92–94, 96, 98  
    \mbox, 91  
    \parbox, 91, 93, 95, 122, 413  
    \raisebox, 99, 177  
    \rule, 97–99, 124  
    \text, 13, 18, 66, 67, 83, 91, 138,  
        146–147, 164, 165, 193, 229, 289  
environments for *minipage*, 91, 93, 96,  
    388, 389  
framed, 93–94  
measurements of, 413  
measuring, *see* measurements  
single line, 91–93, 146  
vertical alignment of, 96, 99  
text environments, 101–133  
    and stretchable vertical space, 414  
    blank lines in, 41, 102  
    for abstracts, *see* abstract  
    for alignment, 51, 90, 108, 118, 215,  
        414, 422  
    for boxes, *see under* text boxes  
    for documents, *see* document  
    for indexes, *see* theindex  
    for letters, *see* letter  
    for lists, *see* list text environments,  
        *see also* list text environments  
    for styles, *see under* text style  
    for tables, *see* tables  
    rules for, 102  
text mode, 46  
text style commands  
    avoiding direct use of, 482  
    \emph, 6, 10, 51, 74, 75, 325, 506  
    \textbf, 10, 57, 74, 77, 147, 289, 325,  
        506  
    \textit, 74, 75, 325, 506  
    \textmd, 74, 77, 506  
    \textnormal, 74, 74, 146, 506  
    \textrm, 74, 289, 506  
    \textsc, 74, 75, 506  
    \textsf, 74, 506  
    \textsl, 74, 75, 506  
    \texttt, 10, 60, 74, 506  
    \textup, 74, 75, 506  
text style environments  
    **bfseries**, 107  
    `em`, 107  
    `itshape`, 107  
    `rmfamily`, 107  
    `scshape`, 107  
    `sffamily`, 107  
    `slshape`, 107

**ttfamily**, 107  
**upshape**, 107  
**text symbols**, 61, 64  
  commands, 60, 63, 267, 506, 508, 509  
  typing, 58–63  
**\textasciicircum** (^ circumflex), 64, 508  
**\textasciitilde** (~ tilde), 509  
**\textasteriskcentered** (\* asterisk), 61, 64, 508  
**Textastics**  
   $\text{LATEX}$  app for iPad, 544  
**\textbackslash** (\ backslash), 60, 64, 508  
**\textbar** (| vertical bar), 60, 64, 508  
**\textbf** (font weight com.), 10, 57, 74, 77, 147, 289, 325, 506  
**\textbullet** (• bullet), 64, 508  
**\textcircled** (@), 63, 64, 508  
**\textcolor** (beamer com.), 336  
**\textcompwordmark** (lig.-suppr. com.), 62, 369, 422  
**\textemdash** (— em dash), 64, 508  
**\textendash** (– em dash), 64, 508  
**\textexcldown** (! exclamation mark), 46  
**\textgreater** (> greater than), 64, 508  
**\textit** (font shape com.), 74, 75, 75, 325, 506  
**\textless** (< less than), 64, 508  
**\textmd** (font weight com.), 74, 77, 506  
**\textnormal** (font shape com.), 74, 74, 146, 506  
**textnote1.tex** (sample file), 8–9  
**textnote1bad.tex** (sample file), 11  
**textnote2.tex** (sample file), 9–11  
**\TextOrMath** (text and math mode com.), 299  
**\textperiodcentered** (· midpoint), 64, 508  
**\textquestiondown** (՞ question mark), 64, 508  
**\textquotedbl** (Eur. quot. mark), 509  
**\textquotedblleft** (“ left double quote), 64, 508  
**\textquotedblright** (” right double quote), 64, 508  
**\textquotel** (‘ left single quote), 509  
**\textquoter** (’)  
  Eur. quot. mark, 509  
  right single quote, 509  
**\textregistered** (® registered trademark), 64, 508  
**\textrm** (font shape com.), 74, 289, 506  
**\textsc** (font shape com.), 74, 75, 506  
**\textsf** (font shape com.), 74, 506  
**\textsl** (font shape com.), 74, 75, 506  
**\textstyle** (math font size com.), 186, 191  
**\textsubscript**, 239, 299  
**\textsuperscript** (^a), 299, 509  
**\texttrademark** (™ trademark), 509  
**\texttt** (font shape com.), 10, 60, 74, 506  
**\textup** (font shape com.), 74, 75, 506  
**textures** (opt. of *hyperref* pack.), 307  
**\textvisible** (space), 9, 47, 48, 509  
**\textwidth** (length com.), 260, 406, 411  
**tfm** ( $\text{LATEX}$  font metric file), 516  
**\tfrac** ( $\frac{x}{y}$ ), 141, 187  
**\TH** (Thorn Eur. char.), 509  
**\th** (thorn Eur. char.), 509  
**\thanks** (top matter com.), 72, 268–270, 284, 292  
**\the** (value expansion com.), 63–65, 70, 71, 97, 408  
**thebibliography** (bibliography env.), 50, 251–257, 414, 443, 452  
  argument of, 253, 256  
**\thechapter** (the value of counter chapter), 408  
**\thefootnote** (the value of counter footnote), 71, 72  
**theindex** (index env.), 257, 414, 455, 465  
  commands in, 257, 455  
**themes** (beamer distr. directory), 344  
**themes**, for beamer presentations, 316, 343–345  
  Berkeley, 316, 319, 320, 344  
  color options, 344  
  Warsaw, 28, 319, 320, 344  
**theorem** (proclamation env.), 35, 109, 112, 330, 388  
  logical design of, 35  
  visual design of, 35  
**theorem** (pack.), 301  
**theorem-like structures**, *see* proclamations  
**\theoremname** (*hyperref* redef. name), 311  
**\theoremstyle\*** (procl. com.), 113–115  
**\theoremstyle** (procl. com.), 113–115  
**\theparentequation** (the value of counter parentequation), 409  
**\therefore** (∴ binary rel.), 494  
**\thesection** (the value of counter section), 408  
**theses**, in *BIBTEX* database files, 439–440  
**\thesubsection** (the value of counter subsection), 408  
**\Theta** (Θ Greek char.), 148, 492  
**\theta** (θ Greek char.), 147, 492  
**thick** (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 357, 360  
**\thickapprox** (≈ binary rel.), 494  
**\thicksim** (similarity rel.), 494  
**\thickspace** (spacing com.), 174, 503, 510  
**thin** (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 360

- \thinspace (spacing com.), 16, 51, 59, 174, 174, 503, 510  
\thispagestyle (set page style), 260, 489  
thorn (Eur. char), 509  
Thorup, Kresten K., 410  
tie (~ spacing com.), 9, 47, 50, 59, 60, 83, 510  
absorbs spaces, 60  
in BBTEX databases, 433  
with cross-references, 246  
tie (~ text accent), 63, 506  
TikZ (graphics pack.), 27, 249, 350  
above com., 357  
align com., 357  
arc com., 355  
around com., 359  
arrow com., 361–363  
below com., 354, 357  
center com., 358  
circle com., 351–355, 359  
code.tex (sample file), 364  
colors, 360  
components, 353–357  
controls com., 356  
curves, 356–357  
custom commands, 353  
dashed com., 360–362  
dotted com., 356, 360  
\draw (graphics com.), 352, 360  
ellipse com., 355, 358  
end angle com., 355  
every picture com., 353  
fill com., 352  
grid com., 350, 352  
in com., 356, 361  
labels, 352, 357  
left com., 357, 362  
line width com., 351, 353, 360  
\node com., 357  
optional arguments, 350, 351  
out com., 356, 361  
path attributes, 360–363  
radius com., 351  
rectangle com., 355, 358, 359  
right com., 357, 362  
rotate com., 358  
scale com., 359  
semithick com., 360  
shift com., 359  
start angle com., 355  
terminating lines, 351  
thick com., 357, 360  
thin com., 360  
tikz-cd manual, 361, 364  
\tikzpicture (graphics env.), 350  
\tikzset com., 353  
transformations, 358–360  
ultra thick com., 360  
ultra thin com., 360  
very thick com., 356, 360, 361  
very thin com., 360  
xscale com., 359  
yscale com., 359  
\tikzpicture (graphics env.), 350  
\tikzset (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 353  
tilde (~)  
text accent, 63, 506  
text symbol, 509  
\tilde (\~{x} math accent), 16, 158, 502  
\time (time com.), 65  
time commands  
  \day, 65  
  \month, 65  
  \time, 65  
  \today, 10, 54–55, 65, 132, 292, 385, 535  
  \year, 65  
Times, in LATEX documents, 532–533  
\times (x math op.), 14, 141, 496  
times (pack.), 532  
times.sty (PSNFSS distr. file), 532  
\Tiny (font size com.), 77, 78, 507  
\tiny (font size com.), 77, 78, 507  
Tisseur, Gérard, 364, 560  
\title (top matter com.), 28, 90, 237, 285, 292, 319, 474  
  optional arguments of, 28, 263, 264, 272, 285  
\title (BBTEX database field), 430–432, 439  
title pages, 263, 522  
  document class options for, 237, 287, 288, 295  
  environments for, 474  
  footnotes on, 72  
  of articles, 237, 239  
  of books, 473, 474  
  of presentations, 27  
\titlepage (doc. class opt.), 237, 287, 295, 474  
\titlepage (beamer com.), 316  
\titlepage (front matter env.), 474  
titles  
  in bibliographies  
    rules for typing, 432–433  
  in running heads, 264, 285  
  of articles, 263, 285  
  of structural commands, 240  
    fragile commands in, 58  
\to (→ math arrow), 497

- toc** (table of contents files), 475–477, 488, 519  
     commands in, 477
- tocdepth** (counter), 410, 475
- \today** (time com.), 10, 54–55, 65, 132, 292, 385, 535
- tokens**, 516
- tools** (L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X distr. directory), 299–302  
     packages in, 300–302
- tools** (pack.), 300
- \top** (T math sym.), 498
- top matter**, 25, 237, 239, 262  
     article information  
         of AMS documents, 263–265  
         commands, 28, 65, 72, 90, 260, 263, 263–271, 272, 274, 284, 285, 319, 474  
         blank lines in, 263  
         examples of, 271–274  
             with multiple authors, 270–271  
         customizing templates, 282  
         is document-class specific, 239  
         of AMS documents, 263–274  
             AMS information, 269–270  
             author information, 265–269  
             errors with, 273–274  
             examples, 271–274  
             with multiple authors, 270  
             of books, 239  
             of presentations, 27, 314–315, 319  
         top-or-bottom, placement of tags, 286
- topmat.tpl** (sample file), 271
- \topsep** (length com.), 415, 416
- \totalheight** (length com.), 92, 93, 94, 96
- trace** (pack.), 301
- trademark text symbols** (™ ®), 64, 508, 509
- trans** (beamer doc. class opt.), 346
- transformations**, TikZ graphics, 358–360
- translation**, of line ending characters, 47
- \translator** (top matter com.), 264
- \triangle** ( $\Delta$  math sym.), 498
- \triangledown** ( $\nabla$  math sym.), 498
- \triangleleft** ( $\triangleleft$  math op.), 496
- \trianglelefteq** ( $\trianglelefteq$  binary rel.), 494
- \triangleq** ( $\triangleq$  binary rel.), 494
- \triangleright** ( $\triangleright$  math op.), 496
- \trianglerighteq** ( $\trianglerighteq$  binary rel.), 494
- trivlist** (list text env.), 422
- \tt** (obs. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09 font com.), 79
- \ttfamily** (font shape com. dec.), 74, 107, 126, 506
- ttfamily** (font shape env.), 107
- TUG** (TeX Users Group), 5, 525, 528–529
- TUGboat*, 528
- two-letter font commands**, *see under* font commands
- twocolumn** (doc. class opt.), 69, 86, 249, 287, 295, 296  
     and footnotes, 301
- \twocolumn** (double-column com.), 86
- \twoheadleftarrow** ( $\twoheadleftarrow$  math arrow), 497
- \twoheadrightarrow** ( $\twoheadrightarrow$  math arrow), 497
- twoside** (doc. class opt.), 69, 237, 287, 295, 296, 474
- type** (BIBTEX database field), 431
- type foundries**, 532, 534
- types**  
     of commands, 57–58  
     of math symbols, 172, 186  
     declaring, 182
- typeset**  
     example articles  
         **secondarticle.tex**, 274–281
- files**, 5, 6  
     DVI format, 517  
     PDF format, 6, 250, 307, 517
- typesetting**  
     indexes, 465–467  
     source files, 5, 11, 20, 34, 36, 38, 47, 58, 521  
     tables of contents, 475–477  
     with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, 32, 33, 512, 516–520
- typesetting source files**  
     iPad, 548, 551
- typewriter style**  
     document font family, 73, 74, 74  
     font shape, 10, 60, 62, 74, 107, 126, 369, 506, 532  
     fonts, 72  
     in math, 183, 183, 502
- typing**  
     bibliographic entries, 432–442  
     accents in, 433  
     names in, 432  
     rules for, 449–452  
     titles in, 432–433  
     books, 471–489  
     exercises, 478  
     footnotes, 71–72  
     math, 24, 135–193  
     poetry, 128–129  
     programs, 125–127, 129–131  
     quotations, 127–128  
     text, 45–99  
         symbols, 58–63
- typographical**  
     errors, 35  
     rules for  
         abbreviations and acronyms, 75

- initials, 51
- \u breve text accent ( $\text{^}$ ), 63, 506
- UK TUG (United Kingdom TeX Users Group)
  - Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), 529
- \ulcorner ( $\lceil$  math delimiter), 149, 499
- ultra thick** (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 360
- ultra thin** (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 360
- Umeki, Hideo, 260
- umlaut ( $\text{^}$  text accent), 7, 11, 63, 506, 536
- unbreakable
  - hyphens, 67
  - spaces ( $\text{~}$  tie), 9, 47, 50, 59, 60, 83, 510
  - absorb spaces, 60
  - in BiBTeX databases, 433
  - with cross-references, 246
- \underbrace (math sym.), 159
  - with a subscript, 159
- underdot text accent (.), 63, 506
- \underleftarrow ( $\underline{x}$  math arrow), 160
- \underleftrightarrow ( $\underline{x}$  math arrow), 160
- \underline ( $\underline{x}$  math line sym.), 160
- \underrightarrow ( $\underline{x}$  math arrow), 160
- underscore ( $\_$ ), 61
  - text symbol, 64, 508
  - in e-mail addresses, 267
- underscore text accent ( $\_$ ), 63, 506
- \underset (symbol-building com.), 166, 180
- units
  - absolute, *see under* absolute
  - dimensional, *see under* dimensional units
  - logical, *see under* logical
  - math, *see* mu
  - relative, *see under* relative
- UNIX, 452, 512
  - FTP clients, 526
  - LATeX implementations, 467
- \unlhd ( $\trianglelefteq$  math op.), 496
- unmarked footnotes, 269
- unnumbered
  - environments, 203
  - equations, 19, 22, 140, 189, 198, 199, 201, 203, 206, 219, 316
  - items, 103
  - math environments, 199
  - proclamations, 113, 114, 387
  - structural units, 241, 473
- unpacked (LATEX distr. directory), 299, 527
- UNPUBLISHED (bibl. entry type), 441
- \unrhd ( $\trianglerighteq$  math op.), 496
- \Uparrow ( $\uparrow$ )
  - math arrow, 497
- math delimiter, 149, 499
- \uparrow ( $\uparrow$ )
  - math arrow, 497
  - math delimiter, 149, 499
- updates
  - to AMSFonts and packages, 520
  - to LATEX, 178, 519
- \Updownarrow ( $\Updownarrow$ )
  - math arrow, 497
  - math delimiter, 149, 499
- \updownarrow ( $\Downarrow$ )
  - math arrow, 497
  - math delimiter, 149, 499
- \upharpoonleft ( $\upharpoonleft$  math arrow), 497
- \upharpoonright ( $\upharpoonright$  math arrow), 497
- \uplus ( $\uplus$  math op.), 496
- \upn (font shape com.), 140
- uppercase counter styles
  - letters (\alph), 408
  - roman numerals (\roman), 408
- \upref (pack.), 288, 289
- upright (font shape), 19, 72, 73, 74, 75, 107, 139, 140, 387, 420, 506
  - context dependence of, 75
- \uproot (root-adjustment com.), 145, 146
- \upshape (font shape com. dec.), 74, 75, 107, 387, 420, 506
  - upshape (font shape env.), 107
- \Upsilon (Y Greek char.), 148, 492
- \upsilon (v Greek char.), 147, 492
- \upuparrows ( $\upuparrow\uparrow$  math arrow), 497
- \urcorner ( $\lrcorner$  math delimiter), 149, 499
- \URL (bibl. com.), 431
- URL (Uniform Resource Locator), 268, *see also* hyperlinks
- \urladdr (top matter com.), 268, 268, 284, 310
- \usecolortheme (beamer com.), 344
- \usecounter (list counter com.), 418
- \usefonttheme (beamer com.), 345
- \usepackage (preamble com.), 24, 54, 237, 282, 307, 308, 314, 370, 391, 456, 521
  - can load multiple packages, 238
- user-defined commands, *see* custom commands
- users groups, 525, 527, 528–529, 535
- \usetheme (beamer com.), 27, 316, 344
- UNIX, 481
- \v caron text accent ( $\text{^}$ ), 63, 506
- \value (value of counter), 409
- values, of counters, 34, 71, 409
  - printing, 63–65, 97, 408
- van Oostrum, Piet, 260, 525

- \varDelta ( $\Delta$  Greek char.), 148, 492  
 \varepsilon ( $\epsilon$  Greek char.), 147, 492  
 \varGamma ( $\Gamma$  Greek char.), 148, 492  
 \varinjlim ( $\varinjlim$  math op.), 153, 500  
 variorref (pack.), 246, 301  
 \varkappa ( $\kappa$  Greek char.), 147, 492  
 \varLambda ( $\Lambda$  Greek char.), 148, 492  
 \varliminf ( $\varliminf$  math op.), 153, 500  
 \varlimsup ( $\varlimsup$  math op.), 153  
 \varnothing (math sym.), 498  
 \varOmega ( $\Omega$  Greek char.), 148, 492  
 \varPhi ( $\Phi$  Greek char.), 148, 492  
 \varphi ( $\varphi$  Greek char.), 147, 492  
 \varPi ( $\Pi$  Greek char.), 148, 492  
 \varpi ( $\varpi$  Greek char.), 147, 492  
 \varprojlim ( $\varprojlim$  math op.), 153, 500  
 \varpropto ( $\propto$  binary rel.), 494  
 \varPsi ( $\Psi$  Greek char.), 148, 492  
 \varrho ( $\varrho$  Greek char.), 147, 492  
 \varSigma ( $\Sigma$  Greek char.), 148, 492  
 \varsigma ( $\varsigma$  Greek char.), 147, 492  
 \varsubsetneq ( $\subsetneq$  neg. binary rel.), 495  
 \varsubsetneqq ( $\subsetneqq$  neg. binary rel.), 495  
 \varsupsetneq ( $\supsetneq$  binary rel.), 495  
 \varsupsetneqq ( $\supsetneqq$  binary rel.), 495  
 \varTheta ( $\Theta$  Greek char.), 148, 492  
 \vartheta ( $\vartheta$  Greek char.), 147, 492  
 \vartriangle ( $\vartriangle$  math op.), 496  
 \vartriangleleft ( $\vartriangleleft$  math op.), 496  
 \vartriangleright ( $\vartriangleright$  math op.), 496  
 \varUpsilon ( $\varUpsilon$  Greek char.), 148, 492  
 \varXi ( $\varXi$  Greek char.), 148, 492  
 \Vdash ( $\Vdash$  binary rel.), 494  
 \vDash ( $\vDash$  binary rel.), 494  
 \vdash ( $\vdash$  binary rel.), 493  
 \vdots (vertical ellipsis), 144, 223  
 \vec (math accent), 16, 158, 382, 502  
 \vee ( $\vee$  math op.), 496  
 \veebar ( $\veebar$  math op.), 496  
 \verb (inline verbatim com.), 131–133  
     in aligned math environments, 132  
     in argument of other commands, 132  
     spaces in, 132  
 \verb\* (inline verbatim com.), 132  
     delimiters with, 131–133  
 \verbatim (disp. text env.), 102, 129–131,  
     301, 346, 513  
     blank lines in, 130  
     characters following, 130  
     simulating with \verb, 132  
 \verbatim (pack.), 70, 71, 130, 131, 301,  
     391  
 \verse (disp. text env.), 128, 414  
     breaking lines in, 129
- versions  
     of AMS packages and AMSFonts, 288,  
     289, 514, 515, 520  
     of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X packages, 519–520  
 \Vert (|| math delimiter), 149, 499  
 \vert (| math delimiter), 149, 499  
 vertical  
     alignment, of boxes, 95, 96, 99  
     bar (| text symbol), 64, 508  
     ellipses, 144, 223  
     glue, 517  
     lines  
         in CD environments, 229  
         in tabular environments, 119  
     math arrows, 229  
 vertical spacing  
     adding after \\, 81  
     adding to table of contents, 476  
     adjusting  
         with \arraystretch, 123  
         with struts, 123  
     adjusting with the setspace package, 83  
     between marginal notes, 411  
     between paragraphs, 411  
     commands  
         \bigskip, 40, 88  
         \enlargethispage, 85, 486, 488  
         \medskip, 88  
         \smallskip, 40, 88  
         \smash, 99, 188, 188  
         to avoid using, 483  
         \vfill (fill com.), 91  
         \phantom, 89, 187  
         \vskip, 40  
         \vspace, 40, 88  
         \vspace\*, 89  
     in boxes, 99  
     in indexes, 257, 455  
     in math mode, 187–188  
     in text, 40, 88–89, 382, 476, 484, 488  
     preventing removal of, 89  
     stretchable, 414  
     using the setspace package, 83  
 very thick (TikZ graphics pack. com.),  
     356, 360, 361  
 very thin (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 360  
 \vfill (space fill com.), 91  
 viewers  
     DVI, 517, 527  
     PDF, *see under PDF*  
 viewing typeset files, 517  
     DVI format, 517  
     PDF format, 6, 250, 307, 517  
 virtex (TeX program), 515

- visible spaces (`_`), 9, 47  
    and `\verb*` command, 132
- Visual  
    Guide, to multiline math formulas, 195
- visual  
    design, 35, 235, 258–260, 345  
    markup, 522  
    guide, to multiline math formulas, 196
- `Vmatrix` (subsid. math env.), 167, 223
- `vmatrix` (subsid. math env.), 17, 223
- `volume` (BBTEX database field), 430, 431
- von, in bibliographic entries, 432
- `\vphantom` (spacing com.), 89, 187
- `\vskip` (spacing com.), 40
- `\vspace` (spacing com.), 40, 88
- `\vspace*` (spacing com.), 89
- `vtex` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 307
- `\Vvdash` (||- binary rel.), 494
- warning messages  
    about hyphenation, 80  
    `Abstract` should precede `\maketitle`  
        in AMS document classes, 239
- Characters dropped after  
    `\end{verbatim}`, 130
- `\end` occurred inside a group at level  
    `x`, 56
- `\end` occurred when `\xxx` on line `yy`  
    was incomplete, 480
- generated by overlapping braces, 56
- Label(s) may have changed, 245
- line numbers in, 11
- lines are too wide, 11–81
- No auxiliary output files, 518
- Overfull `\hbox`, 11–81, 517  
    suppressing, 80
- recorded in log file, 34, 80
- regarding font substitution, 78
- Rerun to get cross-references right, 245
- Underfull `\vbox` has occurred  
    while `\output` is active, 517
- Warning-missing field in `label`, 449–452
- when using `\NeedsTeXFormat`, 238, 391, 519
- with BBTEX, 449–452
- Warsaw (beamer theme), 28, 319, 320, 344
- `\wedge` ( $\wedge$  math op.), 496
- weight, of fonts, *see under* font environments, font commands *and* font declarations
- Weisberg, Jonathan, 544
- `white` (TiKZ color), 360
- white space  
    adjusting, 40, 484  
    and binary operations and relations, 139  
    between marginal notes, 411  
    between paragraphs, 411  
    commands, avoiding direct use of, 483  
    determined by document classes, 86  
    horizontal, 52, 86, 90, 126, 138, 173–175, 211, 212, 302, 372–373, 503, 510  
        in math mode, 169, 221, 224  
        in text mode, 9, 14, 48–51, 86–88, 90–91, 98, 110, 422  
    in arguments of commands, 69  
    in command definitions, 371  
    in command names, 52  
    in delimited commands, 384–385  
    in math, 13, 37, 88–89, 138–139, 171–176, 187–188  
        adjusting, 88  
    in source files, 138  
    in `tabular` environments, 119  
    in text, 9, 86–91, 388, 433, 503, 510  
    in `\verb` commands, 132  
    in `verbatim` environments, 130  
    suppressing, 388, 464  
    terminating commands with, 52  
    vertical, 86  
        adding to table of contents, 476  
        adjusting, 483  
        in math mode, 88–89, 187–188  
        in text mode, 40, 85, 88–89, 91, 188, 382, 484, 488  
    `\widehat` ( $\widehat{x}$  math accent), 158, 158, 168, 502
- `\widetilde` ( $\widetilde{x}$  math accent), 158, 158, 502
- width  
    of columns in `tabular` environments, 120  
    of fonts, *see* font width  
    of text blocks, 260, 406, 411  
    of text boxes, 91–93, 413
- `\width` (length com.), 92, 93, 96
- word processors, 9
- words, are separated by spaces, 66
- work (folder), 5, 8, 10, 11, 38, 161, 282, 308, 314, 315, 319, 331, 444  
    creating, 5
- `\wp` ( $\wp$  math sym.), 498
- `\wr` ( $\wr$  math op.), 496
- wrapping, of lines by text editors, 68
- `xcb` (exercise env.), 478
- `xcolor` (pack.), 313, 336

options, 337  
\Xi ( $\Xi$  Greek char.), 148, 492  
\xi ( $\xi$  Greek char.), 147, 492  
\xleftarrow (stretchable math arrow), 160  
xr (pack.), 246, 301  
\xrightarrow (stretchable math arrow), 160  
xscale (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 359  
xspace (pack.), 302, 372–373  
xy-pic (pack.), 230  
  
Y&Y, 515, 531  
\year (time com.), 65  
year (BIBTEX database field), 430, 431  
yscale (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 359  
  
zero, specifying in arguments, 98  
\zeta ( $\zeta$  Greek char.), 147, 492

George Grätzer

# More Math Into L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X

5th edition

For over two decades, this comprehensive manual has been the standard introduction and complete reference for writing articles and books containing mathematical formulas. If the reader requires a streamlined approach to learning LaTeX for composing everyday documents, Grätzer's © 2014 *Practical LaTeX* may also be a good choice.

In this carefully revised fifth edition, the Short Course has been brought up to date and reflects a modern and practical approach to LaTeX usage. New chapters have been added on illustrations and how to use LaTeX on an iPad.

#### Key features:

- An example-based, visual approach and a gentle introduction with the Short Course
- A detailed exposition of multiline math formulas with a Visual Guide
- A unified approach to TeX, LaTeX, and the AMS enhancements
- A quick introduction to creating presentations with formulas

#### From earlier reviews:

*Grätzer's book is a solution.*

**European Mathematical Society Newsletter**

*There are several LaTeX guides, but this one wins hands down for the elegance of its approach and breadth of coverage.*

**Amazon.com, Best of 2000, Editor's choice**

*A novice reader will be able to learn the most essential features of LaTeX sufficient to begin typesetting papers within a few hours of time... An experienced TeX user, on the other hand, will find a systematic and detailed discussion of LaTeX features.*

**Report on Mathematical Physics**

*A very helpful and useful tool for all scientists and engineers.*

**Review of Astronomical Tools**

**Professional Computing**

ISBN 978-3-319-23795-4



9 783319 237954

► [springer.com](http://springer.com)